

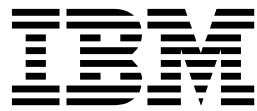
Security zSecure Alert
Version 2.2.0

User Reference Manual



Security zSecure Alert
Version 2.2.0

User Reference Manual



Note

Before using this information and the product it supports, read the information in "Notices" on page 147.

November 2015

This edition applies to version 2, release 2, modification 0 of IBM Security zSecure Alert (product number 5655-N21) and to all subsequent releases and modifications until otherwise indicated in new editions.

© Copyright IBM Corporation 2002, 2015.

US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Contents

About this publication vii

zSecure documentation	vii
Obtain licensed documentation.	vii
IBM Security zSecure Suite library	viii
IBM Security zSecure Manager for RACF z/VM library	x
Related documentation.	xi
Accessibility	xii
Technical training	xii
Support information	xii
Statement of Good Security Practices.	xii

Chapter 1. Introduction 1

Chapter 2. zSecure Alert configuration . 3

Overview	3
Alert activation guidelines.	5
Configuration guidelines and performance implications	6
Intervals.	6
Buffers	6
Configuring zSecure Alert	9
Alert configuration: manage alert configurations (SE.A.A)	10
Alert configuration: specify general settings ..	12
Alert configuration: specify alert destinations ..	16
Alert configuration: select alert categories . ..	20
Alert configuration: verify alert configuration ..	23
Alert configuration: refresh alert configuration..	24
Email address lists (SE.A.E)	24
Define PCI PAN and PCI AUTH data sets, users, and groups (SE.A.P)	27
Sensitive resources, userids, and groups (SE.A.S) ..	29
Installation-defined alerts.	30
Specifying the alert ID and data source	31
CARLa skeleton for existing alerts.	35
Environment-dependent selection	37
Alert condition	37
Action specification.	38
Email layout	39
Text message layout	39
SNMP layout.	39
UNIX syslog layout.	40
Command section	40

Chapter 3. Predefined alerts 41

Standard email layout	45
Predefined RACF alerts	46
User alerts.	46
Logon by unknown user (1101).	46
Logon with emergency user ID (1102) . . .	46
Logon of a user ID with uid(0) (UNIX superuser) (1103)	47
Highly authorized user revoked for password (1104)	48

System authority granted (1105)	48
System authority removed (1106)	49
Group authority granted (1107).	49
Group authority removed (1108)	50
SPECIAL authority used by non-SPECIAL user (1109).	51
Non-OPERATIONS user accessed data set with OPERATIONS (1110)	51
Invalid password attempts exceed limit (1111)	52
Password history flushed (1112)	53
Suspect password changes (1113)	53
Connect authority>=CREATE set (1114) . . .	54
Too many violations (1115)	55
Non-expiring password enabled (1119) . . .	56
Major administrative activity (1120) . . .	56
Protected status removed (1121)	57
Data set alerts	57
WARNING mode access on data set (1201) ..	57
UACC>=UPDATE on a DATASET profile (1202)	58
UACC>NONE on a DATASET profile (1203)	59
Update on APF data set (1204)	59
Data set added to APF list using SETPROG (1205)	60
Data set removed from APF list using SETPROG (1206).	60
Data set addition to APF list detected (1207)	61
Data set removal from APF list detected (1208)	62
Non-regular access to PCI PAN data (1209)..	62
Non-regular access to clear text PCI PAN data (1210)	63
Non-regular access to PCI AUTH data (1211)	63
Access>=READ on site sensitive data set (1212)	64
Access>=UPDATE on site sensitive data set (1213)	65
Action on UPDATE sensitive member (1214)	65
General resource alerts	66
Catchall profile used for STC (1301) . . .	66
Audited program has been executed (1302)..	67
WARNING mode access on general resource (1303)	67
Trusted or privileged assigned to STC (1306)	68
UNIX alerts	68
UNIX file access violation (1401)	69
Global write specified when altering file access (1402)	69
Global read specified when altering file access (1403)	70
Extended attribute changed (1404).	70
Audited UNIX program has been executed (1405)	71
Superuser privileged UNIX program executed (1406)	72
Superuser privileged shell obtained by user (1407)	73

Superuser privileges set on UNIX program (1408)	73	Invalid password attempts exceed limit (2111)	92
Extended attribute changed (1409).	74	Password history flushed (2112)	92
UID(0) assigned (1410)	74	Suspect password changes (2113)	93
Permit issued on BPX.SUPERUSER (1411) ..	75	Too many violations (2115)	94
RACF control alerts.	75	SECURITY authority used by non-SECURITY logon ID (2116)	94
Global security countermeasure activated (1501)	75	NON-CNCL authority used by non-NON-CNCL logon ID (2117)	95
Global security countermeasure deactivated (1502)	76	READALL authority used by non-READALL logon ID (2118)	95
Global security countermeasure or option changed (1503)	76	Non-expiring password enabled (2119)	96
RACF Resource class activated (1504).	77	Major administrative activity (2120)	96
RACF Resource class deactivated (1505).	77	Data set alerts	97
Global Access Checking table has been changed (1506)	78	WARNING mode access on data set (2201) ..	97
Dynamic Class Descriptor Table has been changed (1507)	78	Update on APF data set (2204)	98
Command Verifier deactivated by SETPROG EXIT (1508)	79	Data set added to APF list (2205)	98
System alerts	79	Data set removed from APF list (2206)	99
SMF data loss started (1601).	79	Data set addition to APF list detected (2207)	99
SMF logging resumed after failure (1602) ..	80	Data set removal from APF list detected (2208)	100
SVC definition changed (1603)	80	Non-regular access to PCI PAN data (2209)	101
IBM Health Checker found low severity problem (1604)	81	Non-regular access to clear text PCI PAN data (2210)	101
IBM Health Checker found medium severity problem (1605)	81	Non-regular access to PCI AUTH data (2211)	102
IBM Health Checker found high severity problem (1606)	82	Access>=READ on site sensitive data set (2212)	102
SMF record flood detected (1607)	82	Access>=UPDATE on site sensitive data set (2213)	103
SMF record flood detected (1608)	83	Action on UPDATE sensitive member (2214)	104
Attacks blocked by filter rules are no longer logged – audit trail incomplete (1609)	83	General resource alerts	104
Attacks blocked by default filter rules are no longer logged – audit trail incomplete (1610)	84	Default STC logon ID used for STC (2301)	104
SMF 119 subtype is no longer written - audit trail incomplete (1611)	84	UNIX alerts	105
IP filtering support and IPSec tunnel support deactivated (1612)	85	Superuser privileged shell obtained by user (2407)	105
Ports below 1024 are not reserved anymore (1613)	85	Extended attribute changed (2409)	105
Interface security class changed (1614)	86	ACF2 control alerts	106
IP filter rules changed (1615)	86	Global security countermeasure added (2501)	106
Group alerts	87	Global security countermeasure deleted (2502)	106
Connected to an important group (1701).	87	Global security countermeasure changed (2503)	107
Application alerts	87	System alerts	107
zSecure Access Monitor not active (1801) ..	87	SMF data loss started (2601)	107
zSecure server connection lost (1802)	88	SMF logging resumed after failure (2602) ..	108
Tivoli Workload Scheduler job has not started (1804)	88	SVC definition changed (2603).	108
Tivoli Workload Scheduler job is late (1805)	89	IBM Health Checker found low severity problem (2604)	109
Tivoli Workload Scheduler job has failed (1806)	89	IBM Health Checker found medium severity problem (2605)	109
Predefined ACF2 alerts	90	IBM Health Checker found high severity problem (2606)	110
User alerts.	90	SMF record flood detected (2607).	110
Logon with emergency logonid (2102)	90	SMF record flood starts dropping records (2608)	111
Highly authorized user revoked for password (2104)	90	Attacks blocked by filter rules are no longer logged – audit trail incomplete (2609)	111
System authority granted (2105)	91	Attacks blocked by default filter rules are no longer logged – audit trail incomplete (2610)	112
System authority removed (2106)	91	SMF 119 subtype is no longer written - audit trail incomplete (2611)	112

IP filtering support and IPSec tunnel support deactivated (2612)	113
Ports below 1024 are not reserved anymore (2613)	113
Interface security class changed (2614)	114
IP filter rules changed (2615)	114
Application alerts	115
zSecure server connection lost (2802)	115
Tivoli Workload Scheduler job has not started (2804)	115
Tivoli Workload Scheduler job is late (2805) (2806)	116
Predefined alert configuration	117
Alert definition - specify action	117
Emergency user configuration (alerts 1102 and 2102)	117
Revocation for excessive violations (1115) configuration	118
Major administrative activity (1120 & 2120) configuration	119
Important groups (1701) configuration	120
Tivoli Workload Scheduler (1804, 1805, 1806, 2804, 2805, 2806)	120
Number of violations and logonids to exclude (2115) configuration	121
Chapter 4. Periodical overview	123
Chapter 5. Problem determination guide	125
Information for problem diagnosis	125

CKRCARLA problem diagnosis	125
zSecure Alert problem diagnosis	126
General problems and abends	126
License problems	127
Expected alerts do not show up	127

Appendix A. SNMP output 129

Appendix B. Tivoli Enterprise Console and NetView configuration. 133

Configuring Tivoli Enterprise Console	133
Configuring NetView on AIX and Windows	135
Add a user-defined alert to an MIB	136
Variables	136
TRAPS	137
MIB file merging	139
User-defined BAROC files with Tivoli Enterprise Console classes	139
Addtrap commands for AIX	140
Addtrap commands for Windows	142

Appendix C. SYSLOG format for QRadar SIEM 145

Notices	147
Trademarks	149

Index 151

About this publication

This manual explains how to configure, use, and troubleshoot IBM® Security zSecure™ Alert, a real-time monitor for z/OS® systems protected with the Security Server (RACF®) or CA-ACF2.

The manual is intended for the following people:

- Systems support personnel responsible for configuring IBM Security zSecure Alert
- Security administrators responsible for implementing the additional RACF command controls provided by IBM Security zSecure Alert

Users of the manual must also be familiar with RACF and ACF2 concepts and commands.

For information about installing IBM Security zSecure Alert, see the *IBM Security zSecure CARLa-Driven Components Installation and Deployment Guide*.

zSecure documentation

The IBM Security zSecure Suite and IBM Security zSecure Manager for RACF z/VM libraries consist of unlicensed and licensed publications. This section lists both libraries and instructions to access them.

Unlicensed zSecure publications are available at the IBM Knowledge Center for IBM Security zSecure Suite or IBM Security zSecure Manager for RACF z/VM. The IBM Knowledge Center is the home for IBM product documentation. You can customize IBM Knowledge Center, create your own collection of documents to design the experience that you want with the technology, products, and versions that you use. You can also interact with IBM and with your colleagues by adding comments to topics and by sharing through email, LinkedIn, or Twitter. For instructions to obtain the licensed publications, see “Obtain licensed documentation.”

IBM Knowledge Center for product	URL
IBM Security zSecure Suite	http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/SS2RWS/welcome
IBM Security zSecure Manager for RACF z/VM	http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/SSQQGJ/welcome

The IBM Terminology website consolidates terminology for product libraries in one location.

Obtain licensed documentation

All licensed and unlicensed publications for IBM Security zSecure Suite 2.2.0 and IBM Security zSecure Manager for RACF z/VM 1.11.2, except the Program Directories, are included on the *IBM Security zSecure Documentation CD, LCD7-5373*. Instructions for downloading the disk image (.iso) file for the zSecure Documentation CD directly are included with the product materials.

To obtain an extra copy of the .iso file of the *Documentation CD* or PDF files of individual publications, complete the following steps:

1. Go to the IBM Publications Center.
2. Select your country or region and click the **Go** icon.
3. On the **Welcome to the IBM Publications Center web** page, click **Customer Support** in the left navigation menu.
4. Complete the support form with the following information: your contact details, your customer number, and the numbers of the licensed publications you want to order.
5. Click **Submit** to send the form. The form is forwarded to an IBM Publications Center Customer Support representative who sends you details to fulfill your order.

Alternatively, you can send an email to tivzos@us.ibm.com requesting access to the .iso file of the *zSecure Documentation CD*. Include your company's IBM customer number and your preferred contact information. You will receive details to fulfill your order.

IBM Security zSecure Suite library

The IBM Security zSecure Suite library consists of unlicensed and licensed publications.

Unlicensed publications are available at the IBM Knowledge Center for IBM Security zSecure Suite. Licensed publications have a form number that starts with L; for example, LCD7-5373.

The IBM Security zSecure Suite library consists of the following publications:

- *About This Release* includes release-specific information as well as some more general information that is not zSecure-specific. The release-specific information includes the following:
 - *What's new*: Lists the new features and enhancements in zSecure V2.2.0.
 - *Release notes*: For each product release, the release notes provide important installation information, incompatibility warnings, limitations, and known problems for the IBM Security zSecure products.
 - *Documentation*: Lists and briefly describes the zSecure Suite and zSecure Manager for RACF z/VM libraries and includes instructions for obtaining the licensed publications.

- *IBM Security zSecure CARLa-Driven Components Installation and Deployment Guide*, SC27-5638

Provides information about installing and configuring the following IBM Security zSecure components:

- IBM Security zSecure Admin
- IBM Security zSecure Audit for RACF, CA-ACF2, and CA-Top Secret
- IBM Security zSecure Alert for RACF and ACF2
- IBM Security zSecure Visual
- IBM Security zSecure Adapters for QRadar SIEM for RACF, CA-ACF2, and CA-Top Secret

- *IBM Security zSecure Admin and Audit for RACF Getting Started*, GI13-2324

Provides a hands-on guide introducing IBM Security zSecure Admin and IBM Security zSecure Audit product features and user instructions for performing standard tasks and procedures. This manual is intended to help new users

develop both a working knowledge of the basic IBM Security zSecure Admin and Audit for RACF system functionality and the ability to explore the other product features that are available.

- *IBM Security zSecure Admin and Audit for RACF User Reference Manual, LC27-5639*
Describes the product features for IBM Security zSecure Admin and IBM Security zSecure Audit. Includes user instructions to run the admin and audit features from ISPF panels. This manual also provides troubleshooting resources and instructions for installing the zSecure Collect for z/OS component. This publication is available to licensed users only.
- *IBM Security zSecure Admin and Audit for RACF Line Commands and Primary Commands Summary, SC27-6581*
Lists the line commands and primary (ISPF) commands with very brief explanations.
- *IBM Security zSecure Audit for ACF2 Getting Started, GI13-2325*
Describes the IBM Security zSecure Audit for ACF2 product features and provides user instructions for performing standard tasks and procedures such as analyzing Logon IDs, Rules, Global System Options, and running reports. The manual also includes a list of common terms for those not familiar with ACF2 terminology.
- *IBM Security zSecure Audit for ACF2 User Reference Manual, LC27-5640*
Explains how to use IBM Security zSecure Audit for ACF2 for mainframe security and monitoring. For new users, the guide provides an overview and conceptual information about using ACF2 and accessing functionality from the ISPF panels. For advanced users, the manual provides detailed reference information, troubleshooting tips, information about using zSecure Collect for z/OS, and details about user interface setup. This publication is available to licensed users only.
- *IBM Security zSecure Audit for Top Secret User Reference Manual, LC27-5641*
Describes the IBM Security zSecure Audit for Top Secret product features and provides user instructions for performing standard tasks and procedures. This publication is available to licensed users only.
- *IBM Security zSecure CARLa Command Reference, LC27-6533*
Provides both general and advanced user reference information about the CARLa Auditing and Reporting Language (CARLa). CARLa is a programming language that is used to create security administrative and audit reports with zSecure. The *CARLa Command Reference* also provides detailed information about the NEWLIST types and fields for selecting data and creating zSecure reports. This publication is available to licensed users only.
- *IBM Security zSecure Alert User Reference Manual, SC27-5642*
Explains how to configure, use, and troubleshoot IBM Security zSecure Alert, a real-time monitor for z/OS systems protected with the Security Server (RACF) or CA-ACF2.
- *IBM Security zSecure Command Verifier User Guide, SC27-5648*
Explains how to install and use IBM Security zSecure Command Verifier to protect RACF mainframe security by enforcing RACF policies as RACF commands are entered.
- *IBM Security zSecure CICS Toolkit User Guide, SC27-5649*
Explains how to install and use IBM Security zSecure CICS® Toolkit to provide RACF administration capabilities from the CICS environment.
- *IBM Security zSecure Messages Guide, SC27-5643*

Provides a message reference for all IBM Security zSecure components. This guide describes the message types associated with each product or feature, and lists all IBM Security zSecure product messages and errors along with their severity levels sorted by message type. This guide also provides an explanation and any additional support information for each message.

- *IBM Security zSecure Visual Client Manual*, SC27-5647

Explains how to set up and use the IBM Security zSecure Visual Client to perform RACF administrative tasks from the Windows-based GUI.

- *IBM Security zSecure Documentation CD*, LCD7-5373

Supplies the IBM Security zSecure documentation, which contains the licensed and unlicensed product documentation. The *IBM Security zSecure: Documentation CD* is available to licensed users only.

Program directories are provided with the product tapes. You can also download the latest copies from the IBM Knowledge Center for IBM Security zSecure Suite.

- *Program Directory: IBM Security zSecure CARLa-Driven Components*, GI13-2277

This program directory is intended for the system programmer responsible for program installation and maintenance. It contains information concerning the material and procedures associated with the installation of IBM Security zSecure CARLa-Driven Components: Admin, Audit, Visual, Alert, and the IBM Security zSecure Adapters for QRadar SIEM.

- *Program Directory: IBM Security zSecure CICS Toolkit*, GI13-2282

This program directory is intended for the system programmer responsible for program installation and maintenance. It contains information concerning the material and procedures associated with the installation of IBM Security zSecure CICS Toolkit.

- *Program Directory: IBM Security zSecure Command Verifier*, GI13-2284

This program directory is intended for the system programmer responsible for program installation and maintenance. It contains information concerning the material and procedures associated with the installation of IBM Security zSecure Command Verifier.

- *Program Directory: IBM Security zSecure Admin RACF-Offline*, GI13-2278

This program directory is intended for the system programmer responsible for program installation and maintenance. It contains information concerning the material and procedures associated with the installation of the IBM Security zSecure Admin RACF-Offline component of IBM Security zSecure Admin.

IBM Security zSecure Manager for RACF z/VM library

The IBM Security zSecure Manager for RACF z/VM library consists of unlicensed and licensed publications.

Unlicensed publications are available at the IBM Knowledge Center for IBM Security zSecure Manager for RACF z/VM. Licensed publications have a form number that starts with L; for example, LCD7-5373.

The IBM Security zSecure Manager for RACF z/VM library consists of the following publications:

- *IBM Security zSecure Manager for RACF z/VM Release Information*

For each product release, the Release Information topics provide information about new features and enhancements, incompatibility warnings, and documentation update information. You can obtain the most current version of

the release information from the zSecure for z/VM® documentation website at the IBM Knowledge Center for IBM Security zSecure Manager for RACF z/VM.

- *IBM Security zSecure Manager for RACF z/VM: Installation and Deployment Guide, SC27-4363*
Provides information about installing, configuring, and deploying the product.
- *IBM Security zSecure Manager for RACF z/VM User Reference Manual, LC27-4364*
Describes how to use the product interface and the RACF administration and audit functions. The manual provides reference information for the CARLa command language and the SELECT/LIST fields. It also provides troubleshooting resources and instructions for using the zSecure Collect component. This publication is available to licensed users only.
- *IBM Security zSecure CARLa Command Reference, LC27-6533*
Provides both general and advanced user reference information about the CARLa Auditing and Reporting Language (CARLa). CARLa is a programming language that is used to create security administrative and audit reports with zSecure. The *zSecure CARLa Command Reference* also provides detailed information about the NEWLIST types and fields for selecting data and creating zSecure reports. This publication is available to licensed users only.
- *IBM Security zSecure Documentation CD, LCD7-5373*
Supplies the IBM Security zSecure Manager for RACF z/VM documentation, which contains the licensed and unlicensed product documentation.
- *Program Directory for IBM Security zSecure Manager for RACF z/VM, GI11-7865*
To use the information in this publication effectively, you must have some prerequisite knowledge that you can obtain from the program directory. The *Program Directory for IBM Security zSecure Manager for RACF z/VM* is intended for the systems programmer responsible for installing, configuring, and deploying the product. It contains information about the materials and procedures associated with installing the software. The Program Directory is provided with the product tape. You can also download the latest copies from the IBM Knowledge Center for IBM Security zSecure Manager for RACF z/VM.

Related documentation

More information about RACF and the types of events that are reported through IBM Security zSecure Alert can be found in several IBM manuals. For information about incompatibilities, see the **Incompatibility** section under **Release Information** on the IBM Security zSecure documentation website at http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/SS2RWS_2.2.0/com.ibm.zsecure.doc_2.2.0/welcome.html. You can find information about the various types of events that are recorded by RACF in the *RACF Auditor's Guide*.

Table 1. Further information about RACF administration, auditing, programming, and commands

Manual	Order Number
<i>z/OS Security Server RACF Command Language Reference</i>	SA23-2292
<i>z/OS Security Server RACF System Administrator's Guide</i>	SA23-2289
<i>z/OS Security Server RACF Auditor's Guide</i>	SA23-2290
<i>z/OS Security Server RACF System Programmer's Guide</i>	SA23-2287
<i>z/OS MVS™ System Commands</i>	SA38-0666

Accessibility

Accessibility features help users with a physical disability, such as restricted mobility or limited vision, to use software products successfully. With this product, you can use assistive technologies to hear and navigate the interface. You can also use the keyboard instead of the mouse to operate all features of the graphical user interface.

Technical training

For technical training information, see the IBM Education website at <http://www.ibm.com/training>.

For hands-on exercises to help you understand the basics of the CARLa command language, see zSecure CARLa Training at https://www.ibm.com/developerworks/community/wikis/home?lang=en#!/wiki/Wa6857722838e_491e_9968_c8157c8cf491/page/zSecure%20CARLa%20Training.

Support information

IBM Support provides assistance with code-related problems and routine, short duration installation or usage questions. You can directly access the IBM Software Support site at <http://www.ibm.com/software/support/probsub.html>.

Statement of Good Security Practices

IT system security involves protecting systems and information through prevention, detection, and response to improper access from within and outside your enterprise. Improper access can result in information being altered, destroyed, misappropriated, or misused or can result in damage to or misuse of your systems, including for use in attacks on others. No IT system or product should be considered completely secure and no single product, service, or security measure can be completely effective in preventing improper use or access. IBM systems, products, and services are designed to be part of a comprehensive security approach, which will necessarily involve additional operational procedures, and may require other systems, products, or services to be most effective. IBM DOES NOT WARRANT THAT ANY SYSTEMS, PRODUCTS, OR SERVICES ARE IMMUNE FROM, OR WILL MAKE YOUR ENTERPRISE IMMUNE FROM, THE MALICIOUS OR ILLEGAL CONDUCT OF ANY PARTY.

Chapter 1. Introduction

IBM Security zSecure Alert is a real-time monitor for z/OS systems protected with the Security Server (RACF) or CA-ACF2. zSecure Alert issues alerts for important events relevant to the security of the system at the time they occur. It is part of the IBM Security zSecure suite and builds on zSecure Audit. This chapter explains the functionality of zSecure Alert in terms of its relationship to basic z/OS components and other auditing, automation, and monitoring software.

The main audit log of a z/OS system is the System Management Facilities (SMF) log. This log records events for Data Facility Storage Management Subsystem (DFSMS); for example, opening a data set, z/OS UNIX System Services, network functions (VTAM, TCP/IP), RMF (performance data), JES2/JES3 (job activity, TSO sessions, started task activity, SYSIN/SYSOUT/NJE processing), the external security manager (RACF, ACF2, TSS), and other applications. Data can be extracted by post-processing the SMF log for many different purposes. Commercial software is available for various purposes including accounting and billing based on resource use, performance analysis, capacity management, and monitoring security. zSecure Audit analyzes z/OS system security for RACF or ACF2 systems, using the SMF log as primary information for the event audit reports.

The traditional post-processing of SMF records has one major drawback: the time elapsed between the event and the post-processing can often be up to a day. While this drawback can be acceptable for billing and capacity management, it can pose a problem for security. If a real intrusion attempt is going on, you must respond to it right away. zSecure Alert is designed to do this job. You can deactivate part of your application or network, or collect data on the location and identity of the intruder while the trail is hot. You also know when a global security setting is changed to turn off logging for certain events to SMF.

zSecure Alert is active in your system, capturing SMF data before it is written to the SMF log. It can notify you in seconds to minutes about suspicious events. In addition, zSecure Alert also captures WTOs so that you can, for example, be notified the instant the SMF log becomes full. Notifications can be sent in the following forms:

- As an email
- As a text message to your pager or cell phone through an e-mail-based relay
- As a WTO, which can be used to trigger your automated operations package
- As an SNMP trap, which can be picked up by, for example, IBM Tivoli® Security Operations Manager or your network console
- To the UNIX syslog

zSecure Alert also supports Extended Monitoring alerts. Unlike the event-based alerts triggered by SMF and WTO events, Extended Monitoring alerts are status-based. They are triggered by changes in the status of the system and security settings. These types of alerts are based on comparing a snapshot of the current system and security settings to a snapshot of previous system and security settings. The snapshots are taken at regular, user-specified intervals. The data is compared each time a new snapshot is taken. Whenever something significant changes, an alert can be generated. This alert type can notify you of changes that occur in the system, even when those changes do not generate an SMF or WTO event.

zSecure Alert consists of two components:

- A long-living address space (a started task) that does the actual capturing, correlation, and alert generation.
- An ISPF interface that you can use to specify which events are to be reported, and in what format.

zSecure Alert comes with a set of predefined alerts described in Chapter 3, “Predefined alerts,” on page 41. You can also specify your own alerts. For information about the full power of the CARLa Auditing and Reporting Language (CARLa) and its great flexibility in selecting events and applying thresholds, see the *User Reference Manual* for your zSecure product and the *IBM Security zSecure: CARLa Command Reference*. You can also use CARLa to customize alerts by including installation-specific data such as user data or parts of the installation data held in the security database, and key-based lookups in general.

The following graph presents the zSecure Alert architecture.

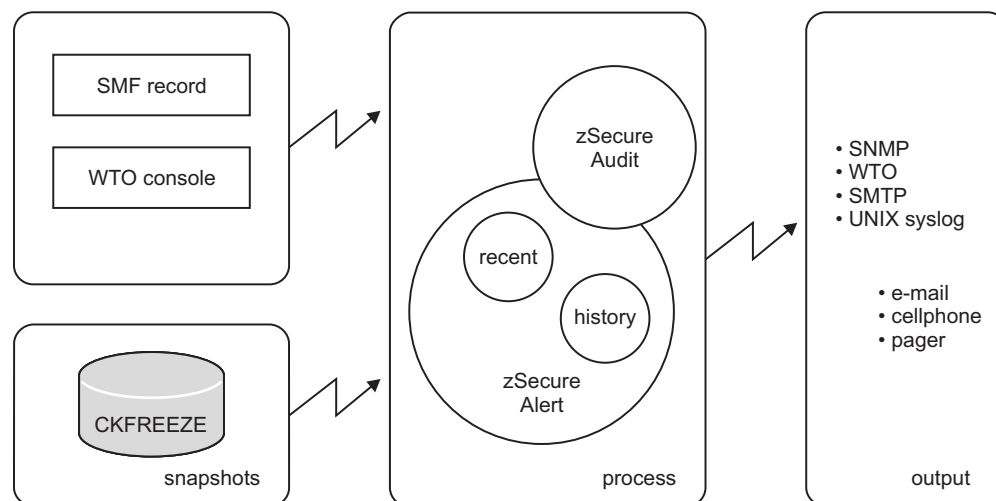


Figure 1. zSecure Alert architecture

Chapter 2. zSecure Alert configuration

This chapter describes the zSecure Alert configuration process. It explains the various steps to select, configure, and activate zSecure Alert in detail.

The ISPF user interface used during the zSecure Alert configuration process has its own configuration. This IBM Security zSecure configuration must be completed and selected as described in the post-installation tasks section in the *IBM Security zSecure CARLa-Driven Components: Installation and Deployment Guide*.

For information about zSecure Alert address space operations, see the *IBM Security zSecure CARLa-Driven Components: Installation and Deployment Guide*.

Overview

In the configuration process, you must specify the settings that are unique to your installation. You must specify alert conditions, the destination where you want to deliver the resulting alerts, and the alert format. You can find all this information in the Alert Configuration.

If you want to work on a configuration without immediately impacting the production environment, you can create multiple Alert Configurations. By doing so, you can easily have different configurations for multiple environments or different z/OS images. In each z/OS image, only one configuration can be active at a time. In a full sysplex environment, sometimes known as a PlatinumPlex, you can use the same Alert Configuration on all z/OS images. In partial sysplex implementations, sometimes called BronzePlex or GoldPlex, you can use a different Alert Configuration for each z/OS image. After completing the Alert Configuration, you can activate the configuration.

The Alert Configuration contains two types of information.

- General settings that are required for the started task, such as the number and size of the data buffers.
- A specification of which alert conditions you want to monitor, and how the resulting alerts can be delivered.

Because zSecure Alert provides many predefined Alert Conditions, these Alert Conditions are grouped into Alert Categories. Because the alert conditions are grouped, you can configure multiple alert conditions at the same time. The following sections explain how to set options for an entire category or for individual alerts.

Aside from the Alert Configurations, you can also create an *email Destination*. An Email Destination refers to a data set that contains email addresses. The Email Destination specifies how to interpret the data and locate the email addresses you want. Alert Configurations use several of the created Email Destinations to specify where alerts can be sent.

Note: Text messages to mobile phones are also sent by email, and thus require an email address.

Figure 2 provides an overview of the configuration of zSecure Alert. The zSecure Alert Configuration data set contains multiple Alert Configurations and zero or more Email Destination definitions. Each configuration and destination has a unique name.

Note: The names of the Alert Configurations and Email Destinations can be unrelated. However, to make it easier to identify Alert Configurations and Email Destinations, create names that are short mnemonics that reflect their intended use.

In the example in Figure 2, the Alert Configuration ProdA has default Email Destination TEST. Several Alert Categories and individual Alert Conditions have overriding Email Destinations. Each Email Destination defines which parts of the associated data sets contain the desired email addresses. The email address data sets are physically separate from the zSecure Alert Configuration data set.

Alert Configuration data set

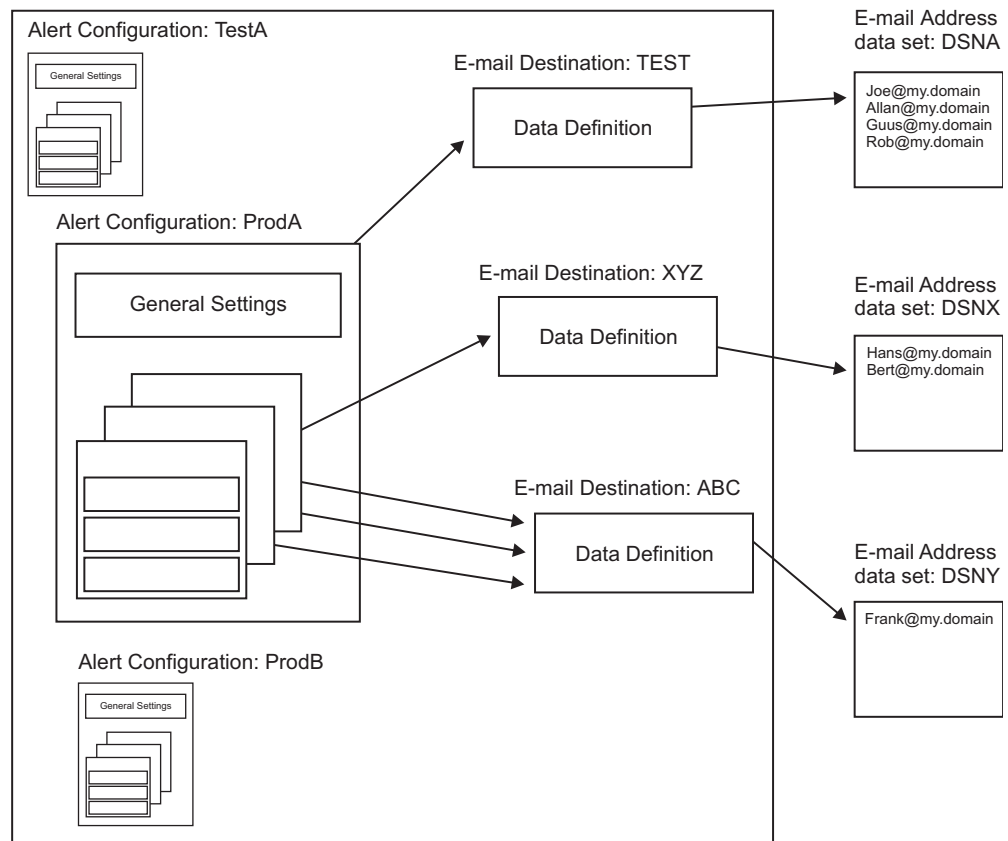


Figure 2. Alert Configuration data set

Alerts can be sent to various destinations. zSecure Alert currently supports the following destination types:

- Email
- Text message
- WTO
- SNMP trap
- UNIX syslog

The alert format is specified per destination type. The alerts provided with the product have a common email layout that is described in “Standard email layout” on page 45. The text message format is a shortened version of the email format for use with an e-mail-to-text-message gateway. It is displayed on a cell phone or pager. For the UNIX syslog layout, see “UNIX syslog layout” on page 40. The SNMP trap format is explained in Appendix A, “SNMP output,” on page 129. For more information about the supplied IBM-alerts, see Chapter 3, “Predefined alerts,” on page 41. For questions about configuring text messaging, contact IBM Software Support.

When you add your own alerts, you can tailor the various formats to suit your needs. See “Installation-defined alerts” on page 30.

Alert activation guidelines

An important step in configuring zSecure Alert is deciding which alert conditions to monitor and whether you want specific destinations for the alerts. For example, activating all alerts might cause the designated recipients to be flooded with emails. You can monitor only the most relevant alert conditions first, and see how much attention they demand.

To assist you in selecting alert conditions, zSecure classifies all predefined alerts. See Table 5 on page 41.

- Class 1 contains the Alert Conditions that are most likely to be active for a basic or Low level of vigilance.
- Class 2 contains likely candidates to add for reaching a Medium level of vigilance.
- Class 3 contains Alert Conditions that you must activate if you want a High level of vigilance.

This classification is just a global guideline. To activate the alerts to reach a certain level of vigilance mainly depends on your security policy and the attacks you want to guard against. Monitoring possible abuse of authorization has other requirements than detecting an intrusion attempt or being alerted to a denial of service attack.

For example, alert 1301 is triggered when a started task gets its user ID from a catchall profile in the STARTED class on a RACF system. Alert 2301 is triggered when a started task uses the default logon ID as specified by the GSO OPTS setting DFTSTC on an ACF2 system. Your security policy might forbid this action; in that case you can monitor it. You might, in fact, have an administrative policy in place to minimize effort in administering started tasks. In this case, activating the alert would be distracting and your vigilance level would deteriorate.

You can also configure Extended Monitoring alerts. Extended Monitoring alerts are based on the detection of changes in the system. They are useful for those types of changes that are not accompanied by an SMF or WTO event record. For example, in-storage updates to certain z/OS control blocks can be detected by an appropriate Extended Monitoring alert. Such a change need not be detected by SMF-based or WTO-based alerts. Extended Monitoring alerts only detect that something has changed. They do not provide details about who made the change and how the change was made.

Note: Before Extended Monitoring Alerts can be activated, the person who installs and configures zSecure Alert must perform some configuration tasks. For more

information about the configuration tasks, see the zSecure Alert Post-installation tasks section in the *IBM Security zSecure CARLa-Driven Components: Installation and Deployment Guide*.

During the implementation phase, consider writing specific alerts to a file instead of sending them. This practice decreases the number of alert messages that are being generated and reduces the chance that the recipient might decide to ignore all of the messages. For more information about writing alerts to a file, see “Alert configuration: manage alert configurations (SE.A.A)” on page 10.

Configuration guidelines and performance implications

zSecure Alert processing consists of several parts. The parameters specified at startup influence the overall performance of zSecure Alert and its impact on other users. The parameters that are specified in the general settings of each Alert Configuration are the *intervals*, the *buffer size*, and the *number of buffers*.

Intervals

There are several relevant intervals:

- The reporting interval for performing data analysis and generating alerts
- The stage 1 interval for reassessing the environment
- The "average" interval for "moving window" analysis

By default, data analysis is done every 60 seconds. This interval can be increased if you do not need almost real-time alert messages. If you need a faster response, you can reduce the interval time.

Note: For each reporting interval, a new buffer is used so that this ties in with the buffer considerations explained in “Buffers.”

The stage-1 preprocessing subtask obtains current information about the system environment and user attributes. This task is carried out hourly by default. For example, information about data sets and system control blocks, is collected in a CKFREEZE data set, which is refreshed once a day at the specified time. However, it is also possible to have zSecure Alert dispatch this task by the operator command MODIFY C2POLICE,COLLECT.

Some "averaging" alerts with thresholds might use a time window larger than the reporting interval. For these alerts, SMF records are kept in history buffers for five times the reporting interval, for example. This long-term analysis interval can be adjusted as well, depending on your reporting needs.

Buffers

Another important consideration for the configuration of zSecure Alert is the in-memory buffer usage. The buffer space used by zSecure Alert is regular pageable storage in the private area of the zSecure Alert started task address space. It is similar in all aspects to the working storage of a TSO user editing a data set. As a guideline for calculating the buffer size, you can perform the following steps.

Note: The numbers given in the steps are for illustration purposes only and must not be used as a starting point for your system.

1. Look at the output of your SMF dump program. Summarize the number of RACF SMF records (Record type 80) or ACF2 SMF records, and Accounting SMF records (Record type 30) written per day.

For instance, on a small system, during an average day, the MAN data sets are switched and dumped five times. The output of the IFASMFDP program shows the following numbers of RACF or ACF2 SMF records: 50,000 32,000 69,000 49,000 and 27,000. The total number of RACF or ACF2 SMF records written during that average day is 227,000. The number of SMF 30 Records were: 19000 15000 31000 23000 and 17000. The total number of SMF 30 records during the day is 105,000.

2. Assuming an alert reporting interval of 1 minute (the default), calculate the number of records per interval.
In this example, it yields $227,000 / 1440 = 158$ RACF or ACF2 records, and $105,000 / 1440 = 73$ SMF-30 records per minute.
3. Look at the output of your SMF dump program for the average record length of these SMF records. It must be 250 - 300 bytes for the RACF records, 600 - 700 bytes for ACF2 records, and 1000 - 1500 bytes for the SMF-30 records.
4. Multiply the average number of records by the average record length to find the average buffer size per interval.
In the example of the small system, it results in $(158 * 274) + (73 * 1224) = 132,644$ bytes.
5. To accommodate for normal fluctuations in system workload, multiply the average found by a factor of 5, and round up to the nearest "nice" number to find the best starting point for your *bufsize* parameter.
In the example, a good setting for the *bufsize* parameter is 700 KB.

After determining the minimum buffer size, the next concern is about the number of buffers required. As mentioned, the minimum number of buffers is also related to your long-term event analysis. For instance, if you want to generate an alert whenever a user generates more than 10 RACF logon violations in 10 minutes, the amount of data kept in the buffers must represent at least 10 minutes. Because one buffer is always being filled with new events and therefore not available for the averaging process, the formula becomes:

$$\text{Numbufs} > (\text{AverageInterval} / \text{Interval}) + 1$$

As a starting point, use twice the number of buffers based on the previous formula. So, assuming that you use the default values for *Interval* (60 seconds) and for *AverageInterval* (300 seconds), you end up with $2 * ((300/60)+1) = 12$ buffers.

Additional buffers allocated through this procedure can be used as overflow buffers for periods with high system activity. Typically, such periods do not last long. The previous example calculation allows for short periods (1 minutes or 2 minutes) where three to four times the normal amount of SMF records must be captured.

In the previous examples, it is assumed that the default values for *Interval*, and *AverageInterval* are used. The main criteria for determining these parameters are the reporting requirements. For most installations, an alert response time of about 1 minute seems appropriate. It is also well in the normal response time of people to emails, or other methods of alert delivery. For the *AverageInterval*, the use of a 5-minute interval is sufficiently long to avoid excessive false alarms, It is also short enough to detect most situations for which alerts are wanted.

You can use the following values as starting values for these OPTION and REPORT parameters:

Bufsize

1024 (=1 MB) for RACF systems or 2028 (=2 MB) for ACF2 systems.

This is based on the average length of an RACF or ACF2 SMF-record, the following specified interval, and an average of 40 RACF or ACF2 SMF-records per second during periods of high activity.

NumBufs

12

This is based on the long-term threshold time-period (*AverageInterval*) and the *Interval* period. It also allows for an additional six overflow buffers.

Interval

60 Seconds

AverageInterval

300 Seconds

During initial execution of zSecure Alert, monitor the in-memory buffer usage, using the DEBUG BUFFER operator or PARMLIB command. This results in three messages at the end of each *Interval* period. The C2P0325 and C2P0326 messages indicate how much buffer space was used for SMF-records and WTO-messages. If the amount of space for the SMF-records and WTO-records for each interval adds up to around the size calculated in step 4, the buffer space is adequate and does not need any further changes. In step 5, the buffer size was specified at five times the average expected space required. So, the buffers are expected to be used for only about 20 percent. It leaves ample space for fluctuations in system activity.

Using the same numbers as used in the previous example calculation, you might expect these messages:

```
C2P0333I Buffer index is 09
C2P0325I Buffer stats: SMF(cnt,len) 00000214-00131928
C2P0326I Buffer stats: WTO(cnt,len) 00000000-00000000
```

The messages confirm that your expected record rate was about right, that is, 214 records versus the expected 231, and that the average size of the records was also in the right order of magnitude, that is, 131,928 versus the expected 132,644.

When activating buffer debug messages, zSecure Alert also generates a message whenever there is a need for an overflow buffer. See the following message example:

```
C2P0334I Extended buffer used
C2P0333I Buffer index is 02
C2P0325I Buffer stats: SMF(cnt,len) 00002728-01037650
C2P0326I Buffer stats: WTO(cnt,len) 00000000-00000000
C2P0333I Buffer index is 03
C2P0325I Buffer stats: SMF(cnt,len) 00000814-00307855
C2P0326I Buffer stats: WTO(cnt,len) 00000000-00000000
```

These messages are issued in addition to the regular buffer usage messages. The indicated buffer '02' is the previous buffer that was overflowing into the subsequent buffer ('03'), which is shown in the regular C2P0325 and C2P0326 messages that follow. If the C2P0334 message is only issued a few times per day, the buffer size is adequate and does not need any further changes. During normal processing, a few C2P0334 messages are expected and their presence does not indicate any buffer shortage or problem.

Using the steps previously outlined, you can select a minimum buffer size and number of buffers that fits your needs, without using excessive system resources. The method starts with small buffers that can be increased when needed. An

alternative approach is to start with many large buffers, and monitoring the buffer statistics messages. After a few tests, you can decide by which amount the buffer size can be reduced.

When allocating buffers, you must also consider the amount of virtual storage specified in the zSecure Alert started task JCL. The region parameter in the JCL must be at least 64 MB larger than the total buffer space specified by *bufsize* and *numbufs*.

Configuring zSecure Alert

About this task

The zSecure Alert configuration process involves several steps, which are performed from the option **SE.A** on the zSecure Admin and Audit menu. If you select this option, you can see the following panel:

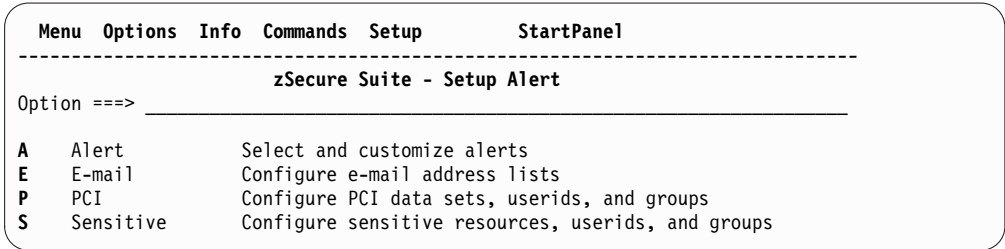


Figure 3. zSecure Suite: Setup Alert panel for configuring zSecure Alert

- The zSecure Alert configuration application provides the following options.
- Use **Alert** to configure Alert Conditions and destination of the resulting alerts.
 - Use **Email** to define how to obtain email addresses from external data sets, to avoid using hardcoded email addresses in the Alert Configuration.
 - Use **PCI** to define PCI PAN and PCI AUTH data sets and privileged users and groups who may access these data sets.
 - Use **Sensitive** to define sensitive resources and privileged users and groups who may access these resources.

Procedure

To configure zSecure Alert, perform the following steps:

1. Optional: Use option SE.A.E to define at least one Email Destination for use in the Alert Configuration to avoid hardcoded email address specifications. See note 1.
2. Optional: Use option SE.A.P to define PCI PAN and PCI AUTH data sets and privileged users and groups who are authorized to access these data sets for RACF alerts 1209, 1210, and 1211, and for ACF2 alerts 2209, 2210, and 2211.
3. Optional: Use option SE.A.S to define sensitive resources and privileged users and groups who are authorized to access these resources for RACF alerts 1204, 1212 and 1213, and for ACF2 alerts 2204, 2212 and 2213.
4. Use option SE.A.A to copy the default Alert Configuration (C2PDFL), which is provided as part of the shipped product. See note 2.
5. Edit the General Settings.
6. Specify the Alert Destinations on the Alert Configuration level.

7. Select which Alert Conditions you want to monitor. During this process, you can override Destinations on the alert category level or on the individual alert level.
8. Verify the Alert Configuration. See note 3.
9. Refresh or Activate the Alert Configuration. See note 3.

Results

Note:

1. After completing step 1 on page 9, you can use the Email Destination in the other steps. However, if you are a first time user, you can skip step 1 on page 9. In that case, you cannot use Email Destinations, but you can still hardcode an email address in the Alert Configuration. In this way, you can gain experience with alert monitoring and creation. At a later stage during the zSecure Alert implementation, you can revisit the configuration process. At that time you can add the necessary Email Destinations and change the Alert Configuration to use them.
2. Step 4 on page 9 is included because the default Alert Configuration is intended to be used as a template for your own configuration. For this reason also, not all adaptations are used with the default configuration. A side effect of using the Copy command to create an Alert Configuration is that the configuration application takes you automatically to all the required configuration steps. That way, you do not need to track the steps, but complete the necessary fields.
3. Steps 8 and 9 are both required to make the updated Alert Configuration available for the zSecure Alert address space. In some cases, it is necessary to rerun these transactions. These cases include:
 - If you have been running, for a time, with a higher release of the ISPF interface, and need to perform a fallback, see the section about backing out an upgrade in the *IBM Security zSecure CARLa-Driven Components: Installation and Deployment Guide*.
 - In some cases, maintenance was applied to specific components of IBM Security zSecure. If so, the installer of the maintenance must notify you.

The following sections describe how to perform the tasks, set up email destinations for easier maintenance, and add your own alert definitions.

Alert configuration: manage alert configurations (SE.A.A)

About this task

To manage Alert configurations, use option **SE.A.A (Alert)**. An Alert configuration specifies which alert conditions you want to monitor, and where and how the alerts must be sent. It also contains general parameters that are required for the zSecure Alert started task. Only one Alert configuration can be active at a time on a z/OS image. After setting the alert conditions, destinations, and parameters, you must verify the Alert configuration. The verification process ensures that the configuration is consistent and does not contain errors that prevent it from being used. The Alert configurations that have been verified can be made active.

Note: Changes made to the alert configuration are not permanently saved until you leave option **SE.A.A**.

When you select option **SE.A.A (Alert)**, the following panel is displayed:


```

Menu  Options  Info  Commands  Setup
-----
zSecure Suite - Setup - Alert      Row 1 from 2
Command ==> _____ Scroll ==> CSR

Managing alert configurations
Line commands are available depending on the configuration stage: C(opy),
D(elete), I(nsert), E(dit), W(Who/Where), S(elect), V(erify), F(Refresh),
B(rowse)

----- Configuration steps -----
Name      Description      Set Des Sel Ver Ref  Act
-  C2PDFL  zSecure Alert default alert configurati  Req Req Req Req Req  -
-----
PRODA1    Alert config for production image A1  Req Req Req Req Req  -
-----

***** Bottom of data *****

```

Figure 4. Setup Alert panel: Configuring zSecure Alert

This panel provides an overview of the existing Alert configurations and shows how far configuration has proceeded. The Configuration steps show OK if a step has completed or Req if the Alert configuration requires that particular step. The Act column can show an indication that the configuration is currently active on this system. In the screen display, you must perform all configuration steps. The panel shows the following fields:

Name

The name of the Alert configuration. The Alert configuration name must be unique and has a maximum length of six characters. Alert configuration names with prefix C2P are reserved for IBM Security zSecure use. Several PDS/E members prefixed with this name are created by the Verify (**V**) and Refresh (**F**) line commands. For more information about the members generated during these steps, see “Alert configuration: verify alert configuration” on page 23.

Description

A description for the Alert configuration.

Configuration steps

This group of fields indicates the steps required to complete the configuration and the order of these steps. The corresponding line commands are available only when the previous step has been completed. Initially a step is indicated as **Req**. After it is successfully completed, it shows **OK**. Perform the following steps:

1. **Set:** Specify the zSecure Alert parameters. The corresponding line command is **E**; that is, Edit general Alert configuration settings.
2. **Des:** Set the default Alert destination for all selected Alert conditions in this Alert configuration. Destinations can be email addresses, text message/cell phone receivers, SNMP addresses, WTO messages, and UNIX syslog. The corresponding line command is **W**; that is, Specify Who can receive alerts or Where alerts must be sent.
3. **Sel:** Select which Alert conditions you want to monitor, and optionally specify Alert destinations on the alert category or individual alert level. You can also specify your own Alert conditions. The corresponding line command is **S**; that is, Specify alerts and their destinations for this Alert configuration.
4. **Ver:** After finishing all previous steps, you must verify the Alert configuration for errors. The corresponding line command is **V**; that is, Verify Alert configuration.

5. **Ref:** After successful verification, you can decide to put the verified Alert configuration in production. The Refresh command copies several PDS/E members over the existing production members. In addition, a refresh command is issued to the possibly active zSecure Alert address space in this system. This command causes the system to read its configuration members again. The corresponding line command is **F**; that is, Refresh production members.

Note: The PARMLIB DD-statement in the started task JCL must point to your configuration data set and this alert configuration.

6. **Act:** A Yes in this column indicates that this Alert Configuration is the active configuration on this z/OS image. The converse is not necessarily true, because you might not have sufficient authority to issue the z/OS MODIFY command required to retrieve this information. If the name of the active started task does not match the name specified in this Alert configuration, the **Act** column is blank.

The Alert configuration overview panel provides all Alert configuration management functions. The following table describes the line commands that are available. Some line commands are available only after the earlier configuration steps have been completed. Enter a forward slash (/) to see the currently allowed line commands.

Table 2. Alert Configuration Management line commands

C	Copy the Alert Configuration. This action can display the general settings panel with all fields. These fields are copied from the selected Alert configuration, except for the Name field, which must be unique for each Alert configuration.
I	Insert a new Alert configuration. This action displays the general settings panel with all fields blank. When all required fields have been entered, the new Alert configuration is added.
E	Edit general settings for this Alert configuration. The corresponding configuration step is Set .
D	Delete the selected Alert configuration.
W	Set the Alert destinations on the Alert configuration level. Destinations can be email addresses, text message/cell phone destinations, SNMP addresses, WTO messages, and UNIX syslog. The corresponding configuration step is Des .
S	Select which Alert conditions you want to monitor, and optionally specify Alert destinations on the alert category or individual alert level. It is also possible to create your own Alert conditions. The corresponding configuration step is Sel .
V	Verify the Alert configuration for errors. The corresponding configuration step is Ver .
F	Refresh production members. The verified members are copied to production members. If the address space is active on this system, a command is issued to reprocess its production members. This is effective only if the started task JCL uses this Alert configuration. The corresponding configuration step is Ref .
B	Browse the general settings for this Alert configuration.

Alert configuration: specify general settings

The General Settings panel is displayed when you use the **E**(Edit), **C**(Copy) or **I**(Insert) line command on the Alert Configuration overview panel. The main difference between the three actions is the amount of information already present in the panel.

- When you Edit, all current information for the selected configuration is shown.

- When you Copy, all information except the Name is taken from the copied configuration.
- When you Insert, only default settings are entered. You must provide the additional information to make the configuration a valid one.

The following screen shows the panel image that you see when using the Copy command to copy the default Alert configuration (C2PDFL).

Menu	Options	Info	Commands	Setup

zSecure Admin+Audit for RACF - Setup - Alert				
Command ==> _____				
Name	AHJB			(also report member)
Description	zSecure Alert default alert configuration			
You may scroll forward/backward to view all parameters				
SMTP node	_____			
SMTP sysout	B			
SMTP writer	SMTP			
Interval	60			(in seconds)
Environment refresh	60			(in minutes)
Average	300			(in seconds)
Buffer size	1024			(in kilobytes)
Number of buffers	10			
RACF database	BACKUP			(PRIMARY or BACKUP)
Collect started task	C2PCOLL			
CKFREEZE data set	CRMA.T.DATA.SP390.C2POLICE.IOCONFIG			
CKFREEZE Collect time	0100			(Time of day in hhmm)
Extended Monitoring	y			(Y/N)
Snapshot retention	12			(Number of hours, 1-99)
Enter / to view/edit the global CARLa skeleton				
- Skeleton	C2PSGLOB			

Figure 5. Setup Alert panel: Copying the default Alert Configuration

You must provide the relevant information in this panel. After you complete the fields, you can use the END key (PF3) to save these settings. If you used the Copy or Insert line command to reach this panel, pressing END automatically takes you to the next step in the configuration process. Otherwise, you can return to the Alert Configuration overview panel.

Note: Before you use this panel, see “Configuration guidelines and performance implications” on page 6.

The General Settings panel has the following fields:

Name The name of the Alert configuration. This field is required. See Name.

Description

A description for the Alert configuration. This field is required.

SMTP node

Specifies the JES destination to which emails are routed for final processing. This setting is initially taken from SETUP OUTPUT. (This option is part of the zSecure Admin and Audit interface.) When not specified on SETUP OUTPUT, a search is done for REXX SMTPNOTE to obtain the value of SMTPNODE. If the SMTP server is running on your

local system, this field can be left blank. If the SMTP server is running on your local system, ask your system programmer for the correct setting.

SMTP sysout

Specifies the JES output class to be used for the SMTP output processing of emails. This setting is initially taken from SETUP OUTPUT. When not specified, a default of sysout class B is used. This field is required. Ask your system programmer for the correct setting.

SMTP writer

Specifies a name for use in SMTP when selecting an email SYSOUT data set. The external writer name is equal to the SMTP address space name. This setting is initially taken from SETUP OUTPUT. When not specified on SETUP OUTPUT, a search is done for REXX SMTPNOTE to obtain the value of SMTPJOB. This field is required. Ask your system programmer for the correct setting.

Interval

Specifies the reporting interval. At each interval, zSecure Alert analyzes the collected WTO and SMF records and generates alert messages. The interval also defines the frequency with which messages can be sent. A recipient gets a message for every alert subscribed, if it was triggered one or more times during the interval. The default is 60 seconds.

Interval corresponds to the REPORT option INTERVAL. See the description of the **Interval** field in the REPORT command section of the *IBM Security zSecure CARLa-Driven Components: Installation and Deployment Guide*.

Environment refresh

Specifies the interval at which zSecure Alert generates the environment-dependent selection criteria (that is, analyze the RACF database and CKFREEZE file, and refresh alert definitions based on current RACF database content). The default is 60 minutes.

Environment refresh corresponds to the REPORT option STAGE1INTERVAL. See the description of the **PreProcessInterval** or **Stage1Interval** field in the REPORT command section of the *IBM Security zSecure CARLa-Driven Components: Installation and Deployment Guide*.

Average

Specifies the time period in seconds over which zSecure Alert averages the occurrence of certain events for *moving window* analysis. The default is 300; that is, 5 minutes. See the description of the **Number of buffers** field for the relation between **Average**, **Interval**, and **Number of buffers**.

Average corresponds to the REPORT option AVERAGEINTERVAL. See the description of the **AverageInterval** field in the REPORT command section of the *IBM Security zSecure CARLa-Driven Components: Installation and Deployment Guide*.

Buffer size

Specifies in kilobytes the size of each of the in-memory buffers used for storing WTO and SMF records during the interval period. The number must be 1 - 16384. The default is 1024; that is, 1 MB. If a buffer proves to be too small during an interval, zSecure Alert attempts to switch to an unused buffer. If no free buffer is available, the buffer with the oldest information is overlaid with current information. If the size and number of buffers is insufficient, data-loss error messages are logged.

Buffer size corresponds to the OPTION BUFSIZE. See the description of the **Bufsize** field in the OPTION command section of the *IBM Security zSecure CARLa-Driven Components: Installation and Deployment Guide*.

Number of buffers

Specifies the number of buffers allocated. The number must be 2 - 32. The number must be sufficient to contain Average / Interval + 1 buffers. To cope with peaks in the event arrival rate, extra buffers beyond the minimum must be allocated. The extra buffers can be used in event of a buffer overflow.

Number of buffers corresponds to the OPTION NUMBUFS. See the description of the **Numbufs** field in the OPTION command section of the *IBM Security zSecure CARLa-Driven Components: Installation and Deployment Guide*.

Security database

Specifies whether the PRIMARY or BACKUP security database is used to generate the environment-dependent selection criteria. Use of the PRIMARY database might be needed if you create your own alerts that use certain statistical information like the time of last user access. In all other cases, use of the BACKUP database has the least impact on other system components and provides all information used by the predefined alerts.

Collect started task

Specifies the name of the started task that is started by the zSecure Alert address space at **CKFREEZE Collect time**. This started task calls program CKFCOLL to collect environmental data.

Collect started task corresponds to the OPTION COLLECTSTCNAME. See the description of the **CollectSTCName** field in the OPTION command section of the *IBM Security zSecure CARLa-Driven Components: Installation and Deployment Guide*.

CKFREEZE data set

Specifies the name of the CKFREEZE data set containing environmental data.

Note: zSecure Alert does not enforce that the data set name you specify here matches the one that is specified in the **Collect started task JCL**. In that case, the name you specify here is only used during Verify processing of the Alert Configuration. If this data set is specified in the **Collect started task**, it is refreshed daily at **CKFREEZE Collect time**.

CKFREEZE Collect time

Specifies the time of day at which the Collect started task must be started. The value 0000 is used to signify that the zSecure Collect for z/OS started task must not be started at all.

CKFREEZE Collect time corresponds to the OPTION COLLECTTIME. See the description of the **CollectTime** field in the OPTION command section of the *IBM Security zSecure CARLa-Driven Components: Installation and Deployment Guide*.

Extended Monitoring

This field determines whether the Extended Monitoring process is active. If you specify YES, Extended Monitoring is activated. It results in a system snapshot being taken and written to a CKFREEZE data set at the interval specified in the **Environment refresh** field. This option is effective only if

Extended Monitoring alerts are selected. If no Extended Monitoring alerts are selected, a warning message is issued during the verification process.

Snapshot retention

Specifies the retention period for the Extended Monitoring snapshot data sets. Snapshot data sets older than the specified period are automatically deleted. The retention period is specified in hours. The value must be in the range 1 through 99, inclusive. The default value is 24 hours. The main reason to retain snapshot data sets is that you can analyze the details for generated alerts.

Skeleton

This member contains the global CARLa statements, such as ALLOCATE, DEFTYPE, and DEFINE statements. You need this option if you defined your own Alert conditions. See “Installation-defined alerts” on page 30. Normally, however, you use the provided C2PSGLOB member.

Alert configuration: specify alert destinations

You can select the Alert Destination panel from the **W** (Who/Where) line command on either the Alert Configuration overview panel or one of the alert selection panels. In this panel, you can specify where you want alerts to be sent. Using the **W** line command, you can specify Alert destinations separately for each of the following alert types:

- An Alert configuration
- An Alert category
- An individual alert

This panel can be shown automatically if you use the Copy or Insert function on the Alert Configuration overview panel. It is shown after you complete the General Settings from END, or PF3.

You can have alert messages sent to multiple destination types by selecting more than one destination type on this panel. Each destination type can have its own destinations.

When all destination types are selected, the panel displayed looks like the following screen:

If you do not know the names of your email destinations, or the field names that you have used, use a single colon (:) to request information. A panel is displayed with a selection list of the defined email destinations and their defined fields.

The following fields are displayed in the **Email** section:

Email Send the alert as email.

Write emails to C2RSMTP DD

When both this field and **email** are tagged, the generated emails are not sent, but written to the C2RSMTP DD. You can use this option when you define your own alert conditions. If you are not sure how many alerts are generated, this option ensures that you are not flooding the intended recipient with alert emails.

From The "From" email address. This address is added to the "From:" header.

You can use the variables &jobname and &system, that is, SMF system ID, as part of the phrase, but not in quotation marks. For example, use &jobname at &system<mbx@domain>. These variables are case-sensitive. &SYSTEM, &system and &System are allowed, but no other variations.

Mail to

Enter the destination email address. For information about the specification of email addresses, see the information earlier in this section about "Mail to" and "Phone" specifications.

CC Enter email addresses, separated by commas, for those recipients that are to receive a copy of the email.

BCC Enter email addresses, separated by commas, for those recipients that are to receive a blind carbon copy of the email. These addresses are not displayed on the recipient list.

Reply to

The address or list of addresses to be set in the email "Reply-To" header.

Output format

This option can be used to specify the method that is to be used to format the report. The supported options are:

Normal

Use MIME/HTML email with limited HTML encoding.

Plain text

No special formatting is done. This means that no MIME/HTML encoding is performed.

Font size

This sets the HTML font size used for email. The default is 1. The HTML font size is a number in the range 1 - 7. It corresponds to 8, 10, 12, 14, 18, 24, and 26 point size if the browser default font is set at 12 point. The user can change that.

The following fields are displayed in the text message section:

Text message to cell phone

Send the alert as a text message to a mobile phone or a pager.

Write text messages to C2RSMTP DD

When both this field and **Text message to cell phone** are tagged, the generated text message is not sent, but written to the C2RSMTP DD. You can use this option when you define your own alert conditions. If you are

not sure how many alerts can be generated, this option ensures that you are not flooding the intended recipient with alerts.

From, Reply to

These fields are analogous to the **From** and **Reply to** fields in the email section.

Phone@gateway

The phone or text pager address as <phone number>@<gateway>. See also the field description for Mail to.

The following fields are displayed in the SNMP section:

SNMP

Send the alert as an SNMP trap. The field SNMP destination must be specified.

Write SNMP traps to C2RSNMP DD

When both this field and **SNMP** are tagged, the generated SNMP traps are not sent, but written to the C2RSNMP DD in symbolic form; that is, the sortlist output is written, and not the actual ASCII trap. This field is meant for testing purposes.

Addresses

When **SNMP** is selected, you must use this field to specify where SNMP traps are sent. The destination can be a name (looked up by DNS), an IP address, or a list separated by commas. Each destination can be followed by a colon and a port number in decimal form.

The following fields are displayed in the UNIX syslog section:

UNIX syslog

Send the alert to the UNIX syslog

Write messages to C2RSYSLG DD

When both this field and UNIX syslog are selected, the generated alert message is not sent to the UNIX syslog, but written to the C2RSYSLG DD. This field is meant for testing purposes.

Addresses

When UNIX syslog is selected, you must use this field to specify where alert messages are sent. The destination can be a name (looked up by DNS), an IP address, or a list separated by commas. Each destination can be followed by a colon and a port number in decimal form.

The following fields are displayed in the WTO section:

WTO Generate a WTO for the alert.

Write WTOs to C2RWTO DD

When both this field and **WTO** are tagged, the generated WTO is not sent to the console, but written to the C2RWTO DD. This field is meant for testing purposes.

The **Reset all existing destination settings for this Alert Configuration** option resets all destination settings for the individual alerts. This option is available only on the Alert Configuration level.

Alert configuration: select alert categories

You can select this panel by using the S(select) line command on an Alert configuration.

This panel is shown automatically if you do Copy or Insert on the Alert Configuration overview panel. It is shown after you complete the Alert destination panel through END or PF3.

```

Menu Options Info Commands Setup
                                zSecure Suite - Setup - Alert    Row 1 to 8 of 8
Command ==> _____ Scroll ==> CSR

Select the alert category you want to work with
The following line commands are available: W(Who/Where), S(select)
-----
  Id  Category                                #alerts    #selected
S  1  User alerts                             15          1
-  7  Group alerts                             1          0
-  2  Data set alerts                          13          0
-  3  General resource alerts                   5          0
-  4  UNIX alerts                             11          0
-  5  RACF control alerts                       8          0
-  6  System alerts                           15          0
-  8  Application alerts                        1          1
-  0  Other alerts                             1          0

***** Bottom of data *****

```

Figure 7. Setup Alert panel: Selecting Alert categories

This panel shows the available Alert categories. The following fields are displayed:

Id The report category ID. The second position of the alert ID is used to determine the category.

Category

The zSecure Alert report category. Currently, the following categories are defined:

- User alerts
- Group alerts (only on RACF systems)
- Data set alerts
- General resource alerts
- UNIX alerts
- RACF (or ACF2) control alerts
- System alerts
- Application alerts
- Other alerts

#alerts The number of defined alerts in this category.

#selected

The number of selected alerts in this category.

You can use the **W** (that is, Who or Where) line command to specify a destination for all alerts in this category. Destinations set on the individual alert level for alerts in this category are discarded when **Reset all existing destination settings for this category** is selected.

The **S**(elect) command displays all alerts in the category. For example, on RACF systems, the alerts display looks like the following screen:

Menu	Options	Info	Commands	Setup
zSecure Audit for RACF - Setup - Al Row 1 to 13 of 15				
Command ==> _____ Scroll ==> CSR				
User alerts				
Select the alert you want to work with.				
The following line commands are available: A(Preview), C(opy), D(elete), E(dit), I(nsert), W(Who/Where),S(elect), U(nselect), B(rowse)				

Alert	Id	Se	gECSWU	CA EM
- Logon by unknown user	1101	No	g U	___ N
- Logon with emergency userid	1102	No	g U	Y ___ N
- Logon of a userid with UID(0) (Unix superuser)	1103	No	g U	___ N
- Highly authorized user revoked for pwd violatio	1104	No	g U	___ N
- System authority granted	1105	No	g U	___ N
- System authority removed	1106	No	g U	___ N
- Group authority granted	1107	No	g U	___ N
- Group authority removed	1108	No	g U	___ N
- SPECIAL authority used by non-SPECIAL user	1109	No	g U	___ N
- non-OPERATIONS user accessed data set with OPER	1110	No	g U	___ N
- Invalid password attempts exceed limit	1111	No	g U	___ N
- Password history flushed	1112	No	g U	___ N
- Suspect password changes	1113	No	g U	___ N
***** Bottom of data *****				

Figure 8. Setup Alert panel: Display of alerts in the selected category

On ACF2 systems, the alerts display looks like the following screen:

Menu	Options	Info	Commands	Setup
zSecure Suite - Setup - Alert				
Row 1 to 11 of 11				
Command ==> _____ Scroll ==> CSR				
User alerts				
Select the alert you want to work with.				
The following line commands are available: A(Preview), C(opy), D(elete), E(dit), I(nsert), W(Who/Where),S(elect), U(nselect), B(rowse)				

Alert	Id	Se	gECSWU	CA EM
- Logon with emergency logonid	2102	Yes	gE	Y ___ N
- Highly authorized user revoked for pwd violatio	2104	No	gE	___ N
- System authority granted	2105	No	gE	___ N
- System authority removed	2106	No	gE	___ N
- Invalid password attempts exceed limit	2111	No	gE	___ N
- Password history flushed	2112	No	gE	___ N
- Suspect password changes	2113	No	gE	___ N
- Too many violations	2115	No	gE	Y ___ N
- non-SECURITY user accessed data set with SECURI	2116	No	gE	___ N
- non-NON-CNCL user accessed data set with NON-CN	2117	No	gE	___ N
- non-READALL user accessed data set with READALL	2118	No	gE	___ N
***** Bottom of data *****				

Figure 9. Setup Alert panel for ACF2 systems: Display of alerts in the selected category

The following fields are displayed:

Alert A description of the alert.

Id A numeric ID for the alert. IBM alert IDs use range 1000-1999. The range 4000-4999 is reserved for installation defined alerts. The ID is used to generate the skeleton member name, the WTO output message number, and the SNMP trap number.

Sel Indicates whether this alert is selected.

gECSWU

The Destination Types for this alert as set with the **W** line command. The following values can be displayed:

E email **C** Cell phone (text message) **S** SNMP trap **W** WTO **U** UNIX syslog

The value can be prefixed with **g**, which means the destination has been set globally by the **W** line command on an Alert configuration.

C Flag indicating whether this alert allows configuration to reflect items such as installation-specific names. When the alert is selected, a panel is displayed so that configuration can be performed. See “Predefined alert configuration” on page 117.

A Flag indicating whether this alert is configured to generate an action command.

EM Flag indicating whether this alert is an Extended Monitoring alert that requires activation of Extended Monitoring in the Alert Configuration general settings panel. For more information about Extended Monitoring alerts, see Chapter 1, “Introduction,” on page 1 and “Alert activation guidelines” on page 5.

The following line commands are available:

Table 3. Line commands available on the Alert list display

A	Preview CARLa code. This action displays the generated CARLa for this alert in ISPF BROWSE mode.
C	Copy alert. This action displays the alert definition panel with all fields. These fields are copied from the selected alert, except for the field ID, which must be unique for each alert.
D	Delete the selected alert. IBM Security zSecure defined alerts cannot be deleted.
E	Edit alert. Specify the alert characteristics such as the alert ID, record types, and CARLa code.
I	Insert new alert. This action displays the alert definition panel with all fields blank. When all required fields are entered, a new alert is added.
W	Who/Where to alert. Destinations can be email addresses, text message/cell phone receivers, SNMP addresses, UNIX syslog addresses, and WTO formats. When all destinations for an alert are cleared, the destinations of the alert category are used. If the destinations of the alert category are also not set, the destinations of the Alert Configuration are used.
S	Select alert. After verification and refresh of the Alert Configuration, this alert is reported.
U	Unselect alert. After verification and refresh of the Alert Configuration, this alert is no longer reported.
B	Browse Alert definition. This action displays the alert definition and also allows you to specify an action command. See “Alert definition - specify action” on page 117.

See “Installation-defined alerts” on page 30 for information about using the **C**(opy) or **I**(nsert) line commands to add alerts.

Alert configuration: verify alert configuration

The panel shown in Figure 10 can be shown automatically if you specify **Copy** or **Insert** on the Alert Configuration overview panel. It is shown after you finish selecting the alert conditions.

MenuOptionsInfoCommandsSetupStartpanel

zSecure Admin+Audit for RACF - Setup - Alert

Command ==> _____

Use SETUP FILES input instead of zSecure Alert input data

The following selections are supported:

B Browse fileS Default action (for each file)

V View file

Enter a selection in front of a highlighted line below:

AHJBVSStage one member

AHJBVOEnvironment dependent selection criteria

AHJBVzSecure Alert report member

AHJBVEzSecure Alert extended monitor member

AHJBVPzSecure Alert parameter member

Press Enter to start Alert set verification

Figure 10. Setup Alert panel: Verifying the Alert configuration

If you select the option **Use SETUP FILES input instead of zSecure Alert input data**, the verification process uses the SETUP FILES-selected input set instead of the security database and CKFREEZE data set configured for this alert set.

Note: This option applies only to the verification function. The Alert address space always uses the security database and CKFREEZE data set as configured.

After you press **Enter**, the same panel shows the results of the verification process. You can browse or view the members that were created by the verification process. When an error is detected during verification, the file that contains the error is highlighted in red. To view the CARLa output of the successful "Alert Generation" verification process, you can use the SYSPRINT primary command. Because no SMF and WTO records are provided during the verification process, no actual alerts are generated.

The following members are created by the verification process:

<configuration-name>VS

The verified zSecure Alert stage1 member. This member contains the CARLa commands used to generate system-dependent CARLa selection statements used during the alert analysis. When the **F** line command is issued, this member is copied to member <configuration-name>S. For information about the function of the stage1 member, see the sections about the Alert address space in the *IBM Security zSecure CARLa-Driven Components: Installation and Deployment Guide*.

<configuration-name>VO

This member contains the environment-dependent selection criteria used during analysis and generated by the stage1 member. This member is only used by the user interface, so the zSecure Alert report member can be verified. The zSecure Alert started task writes this stage1 output to the C2P1OUT DD.

<configuration-name>V

The verified zSecure Alert report member. This member contains the main (primary) CARLa commands used to analyze the captured records. When the F line command is issued, this member is copied to member **<configuration-name>**.

<configuration-name>VE

The verified zSecure Alert report member for Extended Monitoring alerts. This member contains the CARLa commands used to compare the latest two CKFREEZE snapshot data sets. When the F line command is issued, this member is copied to the member **<configuration-name>E**.

<configuration-name>VP

This member contains the zSecure Alert parameters. When the F line command is issued, this member is copied to parameter member **<configuration-name>P**. This member is allocated by the PARMLIB DD in the started task JCL.

Alert configuration: refresh alert configuration

Procedure

1. Select this panel by using the F (Refresh) line command on an Alert Configuration.

This panel displays automatically if you do Copy or Insert on the Alert Configuration overview panel at the end of verification processing.

During the Refresh step, the verified members in the configuration data set is copied to production members. After a successful copy, the following confirmation panel is displayed:

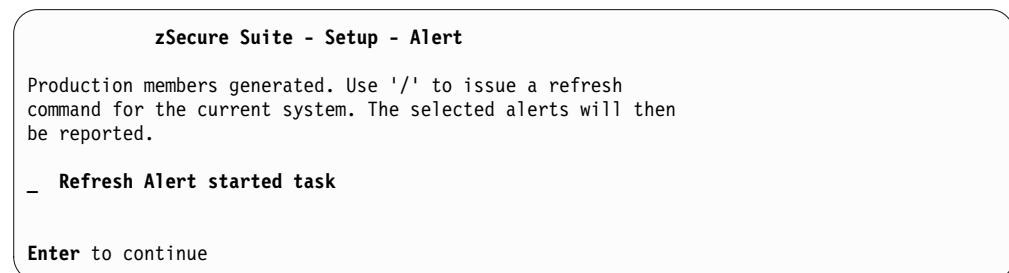


Figure 11. Setup Alert panel: Refreshing the Alert configuration

2. In this panel, specify that a REFRESH command must be issued to the started task.
If the JCL of the started task (PARMLIB DD-statement) is configured to use the current Alert configuration, the REFRESH command instructs the started task to reprocess the new members.
3. You can use '/' to issue an MVS MODIFY C2POLICE,REFRESH command.
When you leave the Refresh panel by pressing PF3, the Alert configuration panel displays again. If all configuration steps complete successfully, the status shows OK.

Email address lists (SE.A.E)

In zSecure Alert, you can use email address lists to mail alert messages to multiple people. You can do that from direct specification of a list of comma-separated email addresses in the various panels. The email option provides an alternative approach. From the option email, you specify a data set and how email addresses

are to be extracted from each record. Use the term email destination to differentiate this from the list of comma-separated email addresses. The email destination referenced by its name can be used in the **Mail to** field of an alert. For details, see the field description for Mail to.

Note: Changes made to the alert configuration are not permanently saved until you leave option **SE.A.E**.

If you are a first time user of zSecure Alert, you can skip this configuration step. If you later need more flexible email addresses, revisit this section and create the required email destinations.

The first time you enter this option, the following panel is displayed:

Note: As an example, most of the fields are already completed.

MenuOptionsInfoCommandsSetup

zSecure Suite - Setup - Alert

Command ==> _____

Enter zSecure Alert definition for e-mail destinations

Name SECADM

Description Security administrator e-mail addresses

Enter / to edit the e-mail destination data set

/ Data set name 'C2P.DATA.MAIL(SECADM)'

Field definitions

Field name	Start	Length	Word	Delimiter
secadmin userid	_____	_____	1	;
e-mail address	_____	_____	2	;

Figure 12. Setup Alert panel: Specifying email destinations

The panel has the following fields:

Name A short descriptive name for this email destination. This field is required and must be unique. You use this name during the Alert configuration to refer to this email destination.

Description A description for the email destination. This field is required.

Data set name The data set containing the email addresses. It can be a sequential data set, or a partitioned data set, with the member name enclosed in parentheses: 'C2P.DATA.MAIL(SECADM)', for example. Use a partitioned data set, preferably PDS/E, because the data set is allocated (with DISP=SHR) by the zSecure Alert address space. A sequential data set requires an exclusive enqueue for edit. You would never obtain it when the started task had allocated it, and a PDS needs exclusive enqueue when you need to compress it.

Any change to the member takes effect at each F C2POLICE,REFRESH and at each environment refresh interval; default is 60 minutes.

Field name A field name such as **e-mail address**.

When the data set consists of just email addresses but has line numbers, use the **Start** and **Length** fields to define the email address field. For example, for an FB 80 data set, enter 1 for **Start** and 72 for **Length**.

If the data set contains other information besides the email address, you need the Field Name to identify which part of the record is the email address you want to use.

During the alert configuration, you can refer to this field by specifying: *destination-name.field-name*.

Start Enter the numeric start position of the field. For example, enter 1 to start directly at the leftmost character. This field is used with the **Length** field to extract the email address from the data set.

This field is mutually exclusive with the fields **Word** and **Delimiter**.

Length

The length of the field. This field is used with the **Start** field.

This field is mutually exclusive with the fields **Word** and **Delimiter**.

Word The sequence number of the "word" wanted. This field is used with the **Delimiter** field to extract the email address from the data set.

This field is mutually exclusive with the fields **Start** and **Length**.

Delimiter

The character used to separate the words from each other. Examples are ";" or a space. This field is used with the **Word** field.

This field is mutually exclusive with the fields **Start** and **Length**.

By entering a / before the data set name, it is possible to view or edit the email destination set. With the data as shown in Figure 12 on page 25, the data set layout would be:

```
File Edit Confirm Menu Utilities Compilers Test Help
-----
EDIT      C2P.DATA.MAIL(SECADM)                      Columns 00001 00072
Command ==> _____ Scroll ==> CSR
***** ***** Top of Data *****
000001 C2PSA01;JohnBrown@company.com;
000002 C2PSA02;MarkTyler@company.com;
000003 C2PSA03;SteveJohnson@company.com;
000004 C2PSA04;KarenJones@company.com;
***** ***** Bottom of Data *****
```

Figure 13. Panel for viewing or editing the email destination set

When the Email Destination has been saved by pressing END, the following panel is displayed. This panel provides an overview of the available email destinations, and enables you to manage them. In the following example, only one email destination has been defined.


```

Menu  Options  Info  Commands  Setup
-----
                                zSecure Suite - Setup - Alert      Row 1 from 6
Command ==> _____ Scroll ==> CSR
CKRM839 E-mail destination added
Select Alert e-mail destination
The following line commands are available: B(rowse), C(opy), D(elete),
E(dit set), I(nsert), S(elect), V(iew)
-----
Set name  Description
Data set name
-  SECADM  Security administrator e-mail addresses
          'C2P.DATA.MAIL(SECADM)'
-----
***** Bottom of data *****

```

Figure 14. Setup Alert panel: Save Confirmation message for email destination update

The following line commands can be used on the email destination set overview panel:

Table 4. Line commands available on the email destination set overview panel

Line Command	Description
/	Display a popup panel showing the available line commands.
C	Copy the Email Destination. This action displays the definition panel as shown in Figure 12 on page 25 with all fields. These fields are copied from the selected Email Destination, except for the field Name , which must be unique for each Email Destination.
D	Delete the Email Destination. This action does not affect any associated data set.
I	Insert a new Email Destination. This action displays the definition panel with all fields blank.
S	Select the General Settings for this Email Destination for modification.
B	Browse the data set with the ISPF BROWSE service.
E	Edit the data set with the ISPF EDIT service, so email addresses can be modified.
V	View the data set with the ISPF VIEW service.

Define PCI PAN and PCI AUTH data sets, users, and groups (SE.A.P)

Use this option to define Payment Card Industry primary account numbers (PCI PAN) and sensitive authentication data (PCI AUTH) data sets and privileged users and groups who are authorized to access these data sets.

The following panel is displayed:

Menu	Options	Info	Commands	Setup

zSecure Suite - Alert - PCI				
Command ==> _____				
Select library for PCI members				
1 1. Use Alert library 'C2POLICE.C2PCUST'				
2. Use Audit library 'AUDIT.CKACUST'				
Enter / to edit member				
- PCI-DSS sensitive data sets				
- Privileged users and groups for PCI PAN data sets				
- Privileged users and groups for clear text PCI PAN data sets				
- Privileged users and groups for PCI AUTH data sets				

Figure 15. Alert - PCI panel

If only a C2PCUST data set is available, the members will be saved there. If both C2PCUST and CKACUST libraries are available, you can use option **Select library for PCI members** to indicate which library to use.

If an alert configuration is created for another system and the PCI data sets and privileged users/groups are the same as for the current system, you can share the C2PCUST or CKACUST data set you selected.

If the PCI data sets and/or privileged user/groups for the configurations are not identical, then:

1. Create a new CKACUST library with SCKRSAMP job CKAZCUST.
2. Start the User Interface with the newly created CKACUST in your parameter member (default C2R\$PARM).
3. Edit the members with option **SE.A.P.**
4. Complete the configuration with **SE.A.A.**

The following options are available:

PCI-DSS sensitive data sets

Starts an edit session for member CLASSIFY which can contain SIMULATE SENSITIVE statements. For more information, see SENSITIVITY=Site<text> for the SIMULATE command in *IBM Security zSecure CARLa Command Reference*. This member is exploited by alerts 1209, 1210, and 1211 for RACF, and by alerts 2209, 2210, and 2211 for ACF2.

Privileged users and groups for PCI PAN data sets

Starts an edit session for member PCIPAN. This member can be used to enter a list of privileged users and groups for which the alert should not be generated. This member is exploited by alerts 1209 for RACF and 2209 for ACF2.

Privileged users and groups for clear text PCI PAN data sets

Starts an edit session for member PCIPANCL. This member can be used to enter a list of privileged users and groups for which the alert should not be generated. This member is exploited by alerts 1210 for RACF and 2210 for ACF2.

Privileged users and groups for PCI AUTH data sets

Starts an edit session for member PCIAUTH. This member can be used to enter a list of privileged users and groups for which the alert should not be generated. This member is exploited by alerts 1211 for RACF and 2211 for ACF2.

Sensitive resources, userids, and groups (SE.A.S)

Use option SE.A.S to define sensitive resources and privileged users and groups who are authorized to access these resources.

The following panel is displayed:

Menu	Options	Info	Commands	Setup

zSecure Suite - Alert - Sensitive				
Command ==> _____				
Select library for sensitive resource members				
1 1. Use Alert library 'C2POLICE.C2PCUST'				
2. Use Audit library 'AUDIT.CKACUST'				
Enter / to edit member				
_ Sensitive resources				
_ UPDATE sensitive members in specific data sets				
_ Privileged users and groups for site READ sensitive resources				
_ Privileged users and groups for site UPDATE sensitive resources				
_ Privileged users and groups for UPDATE on APF data sets				

Figure 16. Alert - Sensitive panel

If only a C2PCUST data set is available, the members are saved there. If both C2PCUST and CKACUST libraries are available, you can use option **Select library for sensitive resource members** to indicate which library to use.

If an alert configuration is created for another system and the sensitive resources and privileged users and groups are the same as for the current system, you can share the C2PCUST or CKACUST data set you selected.

If the sensitive resources or privileged user and groups for the configurations are not identical, then follow the following steps:

1. Create a CKACUST library with SCKRSAMP job CKAZCUST.
2. Start the user interface with the newly created CKACUST in your parameter member (default C2R\$PARM).
3. Edit the members with option **SE.A.S**.
4. Complete the configuration with **SE.A.A**.

The following options are available:

Sensitive resources

Starts an edit session for member SENSRSRC, which can contain SIMULATE SENSITIVE statements. This member is used by alerts 1212 and 1213 for RACF, and by alerts 2211 and 2213 for ACF2. For example:

```
SIMULATE CLASS=DATASET ACCESS=READ,  
SENSITIVITY=Site-Dsn-R,  
RESOURCE=FINANCE.ACCOUNT
```

For SENSITIVITY, use:

Site-Dsn-R

For site READ sensitive data sets

Site-Dsn-U

For site UPDATE sensitive data sets

UPDATE sensitive members in specific data sets

starts an edit session for member SENSEMEMB. This member can be used to enter a list of sensitive data sets and members for which the alert must be generated. This member is used by alerts 1214 for RACF and 2214 for ACF2. The data set name must be specified in columns 1-44 and the member name in columns 46-53. Filters are allowed, for example, * for RACF or - for ACF2.

Privileged users and groups for site READ sensitive resources

Starts an edit session for member SENSREAD. This member can be used to enter a list of sensitive resources and privileged users and groups for which the alert must not be generated. This member is used by alerts 1212 for RACF and 2212 for ACF2. The alerts are not generated for resources that already have a sensitivity assigned by zSecure, for example, APF libraries, JES spool data sets, etc.

The user or group must be specified in columns 1-8, the class in columns 10-17, and the resource in columns 19-80. For example:

```
-----1-----2-----3-----4-----5-----6-----7-----8
IBMUSER DATASET FINANCE.ACCOUNT
SYSADM FACILITY USER.AUTH
```

The class name or resource name can be specified as * to define a privileged user or group for all classes or all resources in a specific class.

Privileged users and groups for site UPDATE sensitive resources

Starts an edit session for member SENSUPDT. This member can be used to enter a list of sensitive resources and privileged users and groups for which the alert must not be generated. This member is used by alerts 1213 and 1214 for RACF and 2213 and 2214 for ACF2.

See **Privileged users and groups for READ sensitive resources** on how to define the users, groups, and resources.

Privileged users and groups for UPDATE on APF data sets

starts an edit session for member SENSAPFU. This member can be used to enter a list of privileged users and groups for which the alert must not be generated. This member is used by alerts 1204 for RACF and 2204 for ACF2.

The user or group must be specified in columns 1-8. For example:

```
-----1-----2-----3-----4-----5-----6-----7-----8
IBMUSER
SYSADM
```

Installation-defined alerts

New alerts can be created by copying and adapting an existing alert or by creating an alert from scratch.

The specification of an alert is largely done by a number of CARLa code sections in a skeleton member. This skeleton member is used during the Verify operation to create the actual CARLa to be passed to the zSecure Alert engine. In general, it requires advanced CARLa coding skills. This knowledge is assumed throughout this section. See the *IBM Security zSecure: CARLa Command Reference* for details.

When creating an alert, you must decide on the following items:

- The alert ID. This four-digit number serves as an identifier and is always prominently present. IBM-supplied alerts have alert numbers 1000-1999 (RACF), 2000-2999 (ACF2), and 3000-3999 (TSS). The ranges 4000-4999 (RACF), 5000-5999

(ACF2), and 6000-6999 (TSS) are reserved for installation-defined alerts. The second digit of this number assigns the alert to an Alert Category.

- The event that you want to trigger your alert.
- How to format relevant data from the Alert condition into your alert.
- Whether your alert is customizable.

For instance, your alert might need a list of data sets or user IDs. You want to maintain this list without the need to edit the skeletons each time. If you want your alert to be customizable, you must have a panel to allow customizing it.

It is up to you how the panel looks and which parameters it accepts to customize your alert. You can create a panel from scratch, or you can use, copy, or clone a standard zSecure panel that fits your requirements. If you need a panel of your own, you must store it in a library of your own. You must use the UPREFIX/WPREFIX zSecure configuration parameters to make that library available to ISPF. See *IBM Security zSecure CARLa-Driven Components: Installation and Deployment Guide* for the UPREFIX/WPREFIX parameters.

To supply your skeletons with the parameters they need to generate the CARLa for your alert, you must assign the names of these parameters to a variable named EXTVAR; that is:

```
&extvar='c2peeus0,c2peeus1,c2peeus2,c2peeus3,c2peeus4'
```

The format in which an alert is to be sent is specified per Destination Type. There are the following Destination types:

- Email
- Text message
- WTO
- SNMP trap
- UNIX syslog

The email format is the most descriptive. The alerts provided with the product have a common layout, described in “Standard email layout” on page 45. The emails are sent in HTML format.

The text message format in all IBM Security zSecure-supplied alerts is a shortened version of the email format for use with an e-mail-to-text-message gateway where the recipient (for example, cell phone or pager) is specified in the "To" header of the email message. The text message itself can be taken from the subject or the body of the email, depending on the gateway. The subject and body as sent are therefore similar, though the body can contain a little more information.

The WTO format can be used with automated operation software.

The SNMP trap format can be used with your network console. For more description of this format, see Appendix A, “SNMP output,” on page 129.

Specifying the alert ID and data source Procedure

Follow these steps to create an alert:

1. To create an alert, go to the option SE.A.A and select the alert configuration you want to work with.
2. In the Alert Category panel, select any category; for example **System alerts**.

The category to which the new alert belongs is determined by its second digit, and not by which category you use to create it.

Menu	Options	Info	Commands	Setup

zSecure Suite - Setup - Alert Row 1 to 1 of 1				
Command ==> _____ Scroll ==> CSR				
System alerts				
Select the alert you want to work with.				
The following line commands are available: A(Preview), C(opy), D(elete), E(dit), I(nsert), W(Who/Where), S(elect), U(nselect), B(rowse)				

	Alert		Id	Sel gECSW C EM
I	SMF data loss started		1601	Yes gE W N
-	SMF logging resumed after failure		1602	Yes gE W N
-	SVC definition changed		1603	No gE W Y
***** Bottom of data *****				

Figure 17. Setup Alert panel: Specifying Alert ID and data source for custom Alerts

3. You can create an alert by issuing the **C**(Copy) or **I**(Insert) line command. The **Copy** command copies all fields except the Alert ID.

The following panel is displayed after issuing the **I** line command:

Menu	Options	Info	Commands	Setup

zSecure Admin+Audit for RACF - Setup - Alert				
Command ==> _____				
Description . . . _____				
Member prefix _____				
Alert id. Severity. (I, W, E or S)				
Data source . . . SMF _____				
Parameters . . . _____				
Panel name . . . _____ (Panel for additional customization)				
Specify SMF records to be collected for this alert				
Type Sub	Type Sub	Type Sub	Type Sub	Type Sub
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Specify WTO filters for this alert				
Prefix	Prefix	Prefix	Prefix	Prefix
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Allowable destination types	_____	E-mail	Cellphone	SNMP
_____	_____	UNIX sysTog	_____	Action
Specify action	N	(Y/N)		WTO
Extended Monitoring alert . .		(Y/N)		_____
View/edit the alert skeleton	_____	ISPF Skeleton		

Figure 18. Setup Alert panel: Adding an Alert

The following fields are displayed:

Description

A description of the alert.

Member prefix

A three-character prefix for the skeleton member. The generated name of the skeleton member is: **<Member prefix>S<Alert id>**. The three-character prefix must start with a letter or "@", "#", or "\$", and not with a numeric digit.

Prefix C2P is reserved for IBM Security zSecure use.

Alert id

A numeric ID for the alert. IBM alert IDs use ranges 1000-1999 (RACF), 2000-2999 (ACF2), and 3000-3999 (TSS). The ranges 4000-4999 (RACF), 5000-5999 (ACF2), and 6000-6999 (TSS) are reserved for installation defined alerts. The second digit determines the Alert category. The ID is used to generate the skeleton member name.

When WTO is selected as a destination type, the value is also used to populate the <Alert id> field in the message ID:

C2P<Alert id><Severity>.

Severity

A severity for the alert. When WTO is selected as a Destination type, this value is used to populate the <Severity> field in the message ID:

C2P<Alert id><Severity>

The following list shows the valid severities:

- I** Information. Action is not required.
- W** Attention. Action might be required.
- E** Error. Action is required.
- S** Severe error. Action is required urgently.

For alerts with destination type UNIX, these severities are translated as shown in the following list:

Severity	
	Priority
I	117
W	116
E	115
S	114

Data source

The data source of CARLa newlist type for the alert, SMF or WTO for example.

Parameters

This field is intended to pass additional parameters to the generated NEWLIST statement. For Extended Monitoring alerts, the required COMPAREOPT=<compareopt-name> must be entered in this field.

Panel name

If you want your new alert to be customizable, specify the name of the customizing panel in this field. The panel you specify must exist and be accessible, either as a standard zSecure panel if there is one that fits your requirements, or as a panel that you created yourself. This panel is shown as the next transaction during creation of the new alert. It can also be used for future configuration of this alert.

Type

If the data source is SMF: the SMF record type that must be collected for this alert. To collect ACF2 records, you can specify the pseudo-type ACF2. The zSecure Alert program looks up the correct record type from the ACF2 control blocks.

Sub

Specifies the SMF-record subtype that must be collected. The subtype is

only used for SMF-record types 30, 80, 92, and ACF2 records. For all other SMF-record types, the subtype is ignored. The subtype is interpreted as follows:

Rectype 30 The subtype is the standard SMF-record subtype.

Rectype 80 The subtype is the RACF event code. For a complete list of RACF event codes, see the RACF Auditor's guide.

Rectype 92 The subtype is the standard SMF-record subtype. Although SMF-Record type 92 currently only has defined subtypes 1 -17, the range accepted by zSecure Alert is 1 - 255.

Rectype ACF2 The subtype is the ACF2 record type. For a complete list of ACF2 subtypes, see the "SELECT/LIST Fields" chapter in the *CARLa Command Reference*; see the ACF2_SUBTYPE field in NEWLIST TYPE=SMF.

Prefix

If the data source is WTO: specifies which message prefixes must be collected.

Allowable destination types

Select the Destination Types for which reports can be generated by this alert. The alert skeleton must have a section for each Destination Type selected.

Specify action

Select **Y** to specify an action command for this alert. See "Alert definition - specify action" on page 117.

Extended Monitoring alert

This field specifies whether the alert is an Extended Monitoring alert. Specify **Y** if it is an Extended Monitoring alert that compares the current and previous CKFREEZE snapshot data sets. Specify **N** if it is an Event-based alert. Ensure that the **Data Source** field specifies the correct value to match the Extended Monitoring setting. For event-based alerts, the **Data Source** field must have the value SMF or WTO. For Extended Monitoring alerts, the **Data Source** field can have the value of any supported CKFREEZE-based NEWLIST type. See "Alert activation guidelines" on page 5 for more information about Extended Monitoring alerts.

ISPF Skeleton

Type a forward slash (/) in this field to edit the ISPF skeleton for this alert. The skeleton contains the CARLa code to specify the Alert Condition, the alert contents, and the alert layout.

When you add an alert using the Copy command, the skeleton of the source alert is copied; otherwise a model skeleton is used. If the skeleton exists, it is not changed.

For Extended Monitoring alerts, only the selection criteria, the alert contents, and the alert layout are specified in this ISPF Skeleton. You must also add the required CompareOpt statements at the bottom of the Global CARLa Skeleton, similar to the default CompareOpt statements that are already present. You specified the name for the required CompareOpt statement in the **Parameters** field, described earlier in this list.

For example, to define an alert to be triggered on the event that the APF list is updated by the SETPROG command:

Menu	Options	Info	Commands	Setup

zSecure Admin+Audit for RACF - Setup - Alert				
Command ==> _____				
Description . . .	APF List changed using SETPROG command			
Member prefix	AHJ			
Alert id	4000	Severity	W (I, W, E or S)	
Data source . . .	WTO			
Parameters . . .	_____			
Panel name . . .	_____ (Panel for additional customization)			
Specify SMF records to be collected for this alert				
Type Sub	Type Sub	Type Sub	Type Sub	Type Sub
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Specify WTO filters for this alert				
Prefix	Prefix	Prefix	Prefix	Prefix
CSV410I				
Allowable destination types	/	E-mail	Cellphone	SNMP
	-	UNIX sysTog		WTO
Specify action	N	(Y/N)		
Extended Monitoring alert . .		(Y/N)		
View/edit the alert skeleton	-	ISPF Skeleton		

Figure 19. Setup Alert panel: Defining an Alert

CARLa skeleton for existing alerts

You can edit the CARLa skeleton of an existing installation-defined alert. Tag the **ISPF skeleton** option in the panel you reach with the **E**(Edit) line command on an individual alert. If you perform this action on an IBM Security zSecure-supplied alert, you get an ISPF VIEW session instead. You reach the same panel with the **B**(Browse) line command.

When adding an alert with the **C**(Copy) or **I**(Insert) line commands, you reach the panel where you can tag that option. In that case, the skeleton member does not normally exist yet. For Copy, it is then copied from the skeleton member of the copied alert. If the copied member defines local pre-selection filters, their names must be changed in the copy to avoid name clashes. The names are supposed to end in the alert ID. For Insert, you get an "empty" skeleton member.

The information in the rest of this section is based on the "empty" skeleton member. In any case, you must see seven sections with CARLa code. The first two sections specify the alert condition. The next four sections specify the alert message format for the various destination types. The last section specifies a possible command to be issued when the alert condition is raised.

The CARLa sections in the skeleton are each marked with an identifying comment line as follows:

)CM Pass one query

Here you can specify a two-pass CARLa query for the stage1 member. Use it if your Alert Condition depends on the environment. During the stage1 step of this query, its output is used as a prefix for the reporting step. This output is a one-pass CARLa query populated with current environmental values. It enables you to generate a pre-selection based on the actual environment. Your Alert Condition can refer to this pre-selection. The

pre-selection is adapted with each environmental refresh run. Normally, it is one time per hour. See "Alert configuration: specify general settings" on page 12.

)CM Alert condition

Specify the Alert Condition that you want to trigger your alert. For Extended Monitoring alerts, it requires only a selection of the complex, for example, select complex=(base, current). The fields that determine which records trigger the alert are specified in the CompareOpt statement defined in the Global CARLa Skeleton.

)CM Action command

Here you can specify the following two imbed statements to be able to specify an action command:

```
)IM C2PSACTX
)IM C2PSACTS
```

See "Alert definition - specify action" on page 117.

)CM EMAIL sortlist

Here you can specify the alert message in the layout to be used for email destinations.

)CM Cellphone sortlist

Here you can specify the alert message in the layout to be used in text messages. Whether the text message as received is taken from the subject or the body of the email depends on the e-mail-to-text-message-gateway you use. All IBM Security zSecure-supplied alerts send a similar message in both subject and body.

)CM SNMP sortlist

Here you can specify the alert message in the layout to be used for SNMP destinations.

)CM UNIX syslog sortlist

Here you can specify the alert message in the layout to be used for SYSLOG destinations.

)CM WTO sortlist

Here you can specify the alert message in the layout to be sent to the console.

)CM Command

Here you can add a command to be issued when the condition occurs.

You do not need to specify message formats that you do not want to use. However, you can keep at least the alert ID in each section so that you can recognize the alert if it ever gets used in that format. The alert ID parts can be recognized by the occurrence of the &c2pemem. skeleton variable.

Each actual CARLa section is bounded by)SEL and)ENDSEL skeleton directives. The stage1 section also has an)IM directive. Do not change these directives.

The next manual sections explain each CARLa section in detail. When you are done changing the skeleton, return to the alerts panel by pressing PF3. If you add an alert, it is selected automatically. Pressing PF3 twice more, you can return to the Alert Configuration panel, where you can then issue the **V**(Verify) command to check the new alert. If the verification is successful, you can enter the **F**(Refresh) command to activate the new alert.

Environment-dependent selection

You must enter the **)CM Pass one query** section if you want to use environment-dependent selection criteria in your Alert Condition.

The following example is from skeleton member C2PS1204 for IBM Security zSecure-supplied alerts 1204 and 2204. It shows a stage1 query that asks the system what data sets are currently part of the APF list, that is, the DSN field and APF flag field of NEWLIST TYPE=SENSDSN. For more explanation, see *IBM Security zSecure: CARLa Command Reference*. These data set names are substituted into another CARLa query. This query is otherwise contained in quotation marks and thus literally copied to the output file to become the start of the reporting step query.

```
)CM Pass one query
)SEL &C2PEPASS = Y
n type=system outlim=1 nopage
sortlist,
  "n type=smf name=uapf1204 outlim=0" /,
)SEL &C2PESECP = RACF
  " select event=access(allowed) intent>=update likelist=recent," /,
)ENDSEL
)SEL &C2PESECP = ACF2
  " select likelist=recent acf2_subtype=D," /,
  " acf2_access=(OUTPUT,UPDATE,INOUT,OUTIN,OUTINX)," /,
)ENDSEL
n type=sensdsn nopage
select apf
sortlist,
  "          " dsn(0) | ","
n type=system outlim=1 nopage
sortlist,
  "          )" /,
  " sortlist '"
)ENDSEL
```

The generated query is named UAPF1204 by the NAME keyword on the generated N (Newlist) statement. It allows the Alert Condition to refer to it. The NAME ends in the alert ID to avoid name clashes with filters specified in other alerts.

The generated query is meant as a pre-selection only, and thus specifies OUTLIM=0, meaning that no output must be generated. The pre-selection is for SMF records for event=access(allowed) intent>=update on RACF systems. Or, it is for acf2_subtype=D ACF2_ACCESS=OUTPUT on ACF2 systems and for the APF data sets obtained from the system.

The LIKELIST=RECENT clause further restricts the selection to the SMF records written during the current reporting interval. The following section explains about the pre-selection filters that are always available to specify what SMF and WTO input data to tie the selection to.

Alert condition

You must complete the **)CM Alert condition** section to indicate when you want to issue the alert. The following example is taken from skeleton member C2PS1204 for IBM Security zSecure-supplied alerts 1204 and 2204. The entire selection has already been done in a pre-selection named UAPF1204 that was generated by the environment-dependent selection for that alert as shown in the previous section.

```
)CM Alert condition
)SEL &C2PEPASS = N
)IM C2PSGNEW
  select likelist=uapf1204
```

Skeleton member C2PSGNEW imbedded by the)IM directive generates the CARLa NEWLIST statement for selection criteria. After the)IM statement, you can enter DEFINE and SELECT statements.

The LIKELIST keyword refers to a preceding NEWLIST that has a NAME keyword with the same value. It means that the effective selection from that NEWLIST is to be used as a clause. In this case, it is the only clause so the exact same selection is used. The filters used in an alert can end in the alert ID to avoid name clashes with other alerts. See only the following global pre-selection filters and filters defined in the alert itself. There is no guarantee that references to filters in other alerts work consistently, or at all.

The Alert Condition must always be tied to a global pre-selection filter to indicate what SMF and WTO input to monitor, either directly or indirectly. In this case the UAPF1204 pre-selection was already tied to the RECENT pre-selection filter, so this condition is indirectly satisfied. You can choose the global pre-selection filters from the following list:

likelist=recent

Tie to the recent SMF records written during the current reporting interval.

likelist=history

Tie to the "moving window" analysis SMF records written during the "averaging" interval. There is no overlap between **recent** and **history**.

likelist=wtorec

Tie to the recent WTO messages written during the current reporting interval.

likelist=wtohis

Tie to the "moving window" analysis WTO messages written during the "averaging" interval. There is no overlap between **wtorec** and **wtohis**.

This list applies to the global skeleton C2PSGLOB.

Note: If necessary, you can use a different global skeleton for an Alert Configuration.

In these pre-selections, further selection on SMF record TYPE and SUBTYPE or on WTO MSGID is often required; for example, SELECT likelist=wtorec MSGID(CSV410I).

For Extended Monitoring alerts, the alert condition requires only a selection of the complex select `complex=(base, current)`, for example. However, additional selection criteria might be needed to limit the search for differences in system and security settings so that only certain records are included. For example, in Alert 1207, a NEWLIST TYPE=SENSDSN is used. However, the selection limits the comparison operation to just the APF data sets. See ID 1207 in Table 5 on page 41. The CompareOpt statement that specifies which fields to compare is defined in the Global CARLa Skeleton.

Action specification

The ISPF User Interface allows flexible specification of the action command using fill-in panels. These commands are automatically processed if you use the following two imbed statements in the **Action specification** section.

```
)IM C2PSACTX
)IM C2PSACTS
```

See “Alert definition - specify action” on page 117 for additional information about entering the action commands using the ISPF panels.

Email layout

The IBM Security zSecure-supplied alerts have a common layout as shown in “Standard email layout” on page 45. The following example shows alert 1302.

```
)CM EMAIL sortlist
)SEL &C2PERCTP = MAIL
sortlist,
  recno(nd),
  'Alert: Audited program'(t) resource(t,8) 'has been executed'(t),
  'Alert: Audited program' resource(0) 'has been executed' /,
  'A program with auditing specified has been executed' /,
  / ' Alert id &c2pemem;',
  / ' Date and time'(18) date(9) time(11),
  / ' Program'(18) resource,
  / ' Data set'(18) dataset,
  / ' User'(18) user(8) name,
  / ' Job name'(18) jobname,
  / ' System ID'(18) system,
  / /
)ENDSEL
```

Note: The title modifier (t) is used to set the email subject.

Text message layout

You can specify the layout of the alert message for text message destinations in the **)CM Cellphone sortlist** section. Whether the text message as received is taken from the subject or the body of the email depends on the e-mail-to-text-message-gateway you use. All IBM Security zSecure-supplied alerts send a similar message in both subject and body. The following example shows alert 1204.

```
)CM Cellphone sortlist
)SEL &C2PERCTP = CELL
sortlist,
  recno(nd),
  'Alert &c2pemem;: Update by'(t) user(t) 'on APF data set'(t),
  dataset(t),
  'Alert &c2pemem;: Update by' user(0) 'on APF data set',
  dataset(0)
)ENDSEL
```

SNMP layout

You can specify the layout of the alert message for SNMP destinations in the **)CM SNMP sortlist** section. In this layout, you specify combinations of variables and their contents. See also Appendix A, “SNMP output,” on page 129. The following example shows alert 1204.

```
)CM SNMP sortlist
)SEL &C2PERCTP = SNMP
sortlist,
  recno(nd),
  '&c2pemem.' /,
  'eventIntegral',
  'Alert: Update on APF data set' dataset(0,hor) '-',
  'APF data set successfully updated' /,
  'eventWhen' datetime(datetimezone,0) /,
  'onWhatDSNAME' dataset(0,hor) /,
  'onWhatGRANTED' intent /,
  'onWhatALLOWED' access /,
  'onWhatINTENT' intent /,
  'whoUSERID' userid(0) /,
  'whoNAME' name(0) /,
```

```
'whatDESC' desc(0,explode) /,
'whatJOBNAME' jobname(0) /,
'whereSYSTEM' system(0)
)ENDSEL
```

UNIX syslog layout

You can specify the layout of the alert message for SYSLOG destinations in the **)CM UNIX syslog sortlist** section. The following example shows alert 1204.

```
)CM UNIX syslog sortlist
)SEL &C2PERCTP = SYSL
)SEL &C2PESECP = RACF
sortlist,
  recno(nd) '<&C2PEPRI0.>' | date(month,3) date(monthday,0) time(8),
  system 'C2P&c2pemem.',
  '[C2P&C2PEMEM.',
  'onWhatDSNAME="' | dataset(0,firstonly) | '"',
  'onWhatGRANTED="' | intent(0) | '"',
  'onWhatALLOWED="' | access(0) | '"',
  'onWhatINTENT="' | intent(0) | '"',
  'whoUSERID="' | userid(0) | '"',
  'whoNAME="' | user:pgmrname(0) | '"',
  'whatDESC="' | desc(0,explode) | '"',
  'whatJOBNAME="' | jobname(0) | '"',
  'whereSYSTEM="' | system(0) | '"',
  'Alert: Update on APF data set' dataset(0,hor) '- ',
  'APF data set successfully updated'
)ENDSEL
```

Command section

For RACF systems, in the **)CM Command** section of the ISPF CARLa skeleton, you can optionally specify a command to be issued when the Alert Condition occurs. Use of this command section is now deprecated. The ISPF User Interface allows flexible specification of the action command using fill-in panels. These are automatically processed if you use the **Action specification** section.

Chapter 3. Predefined alerts

This chapter describes the alerts that are shipped with zSecure Alert. For an explanation of the Class column, see “Alert activation guidelines” on page 5. The following table explains the meaning of the Severity column. Alerts with IDs in the range 1000-1999 are RACF alerts and those alerts in the range 2000-2999 are ACF2 alerts.

Table 5. Predefined Alerts

ID	Description	Class	Severity
1001	Heartbeat event (indicates that its originator is up and running)	3	0
1101	Logon by unknown user	2	3
1102	Logon with emergency user ID	1(*)	3
1103	Logon of a user ID with uid(0) (UNIX superuser)	2	2
1104	Highly authorized user revoked for password	2	3
1105	System authority granted	2	3
1106	System authority removed	3	2
1107	Group authority granted	2	2
1108	Group authority removed	3	2
1109	SPECIAL authority used by non-SPECIAL user	1	2
1110	non-OPERATIONS user accessed data set with OPERATIONS	1	3
1111	Invalid password attempts exceed limit	2	3
1112	Password history flushed	2	3
1113	Suspect password changes	3	2
1114	Connect authority>=CREATE set	2	2
1115	Too many violations	1	3
1119	Non-expiring password enabled	2	2
1120	Major administrative activity	2	2
1121	Protected status removed	2	2
1201	WARNING mode access on data set	1	2
1202	Setting UACC>=UPDATE on a DATASET profile	2	3
1203	Setting UACC>NONE on a DATASET profile	3	2
1204	Update on APF data set	2	2
1205	Data set added to APF list using SETPROG	2	3
1206	Data set removed from APF list using SETPROG	2	2
1207	Data set addition to APF list detected	2	3
1208	Data set removal from APF list detected	2	2
1209	Non-regular access to PCI PAN data	2	2
1210	Non-regular access to clear text PCI PAN data	2	2
1211	Non-regular access to PCI AUTH data	2	2

Table 5. Predefined Alerts (continued)

ID	Description	Class	Severity
1212	Access>=READ on sensitive data set	2	2
1213	Access>=UPDATE on sensitive data set	2	2
1214	Action on UPDATE sensitive member	2	2
1301	Catchall profile used for STC	3	2
1302	Audited program has been executed	3	2
1303	WARNING mode access on general resource	1	2
1306	Trusted or privileged assigned to STC	2	3
1401	UNIX file access violation	3	2
1402	Global write specified when altering file access	2	3
1403	Global read specified when altering file access	3	2
1404	Extended attribute changed (Superseded by 1409)	2	2
1405	Audited UNIX program has been executed	3	2
1406	Superuser privileged UNIX program executed	2	2
1407	Superuser privileged shell obtained by user	2	2
1408	Superuser privileges set on UNIX program	2	2
1409	Extended attribute changed	2	2
1410	UID(0) assigned	2	3
1411	Permit issued on BPX.SUPERUSER	2	3
1501	Global security countermeasure activated	3(**)	2
1502	Global security countermeasure deactivated	1(*) (**)	4
1503	Global security countermeasure or option changed	1	3
1504	RACF resource class activated	2	2
1505	RACF resource class deactivated	2	3
1506	Global access checking table has been changed	2	2
1507	Dynamic class descriptor table has been changed	2	2
1508	Command Verifier deactivated by SETPROG EXIT	1(*)	3
1601	SMF data loss started	1(*)	5
1602	SMF logging resumed after failure	3	2
1603	SVC definition changed	2	3
1604	IBM Health Checker found low severity problem	3	2
1605	IBM Health Checker found medium severity problem	2	3
1606	IBM Health Checker found high severity problem	1	4
1607	SMF record flood detected	1	4
1608	SMF record flood starts dropping records	1	5
1609	Attacks blocked by filter rules are no longer logged	2	2
1610	Attacks blocked by default filter rules are no longer logged	3	2
1611	Certain SMF 119 records are no longer written; audit trail incomplete	1	3
1612	IPv4 or IPv6 filtering support and IPSec tunnel support deactivated	1	4

Table 5. Predefined Alerts (continued)

ID	Description	Class	Severity
1613	TCP or UDP ports below 1024 are not reserved any more	1	4
1614	The security class of an interface has changed	2	2
1615	IP filter rules changed	2	2
1701	Connect to an important group	2	3
1801	zSecure Access Monitor not active	2	3
1802	zSecure Server connection lost	2	3
1804	Tivoli Workload Scheduler job has not started	2	3
1805	Tivoli Workload Scheduler job is late	2	3
1806	Tivoli Workload Scheduler job has failed	2	3
2001	Heartbeat event (indicates that its originator is up and running)	3	0
2102	Logon with emergency user	1(*)	3
2104	Highly authorized user revoked for password	2	3
2105	System authority granted	2	3
2106	System authority removed	3	2
2111	Invalid password attempts exceed limit for user	2	3
2112	Password history flushed	2	3
2113	Suspect password changes	3	2
2115	Too many violations	1	3
2116	SECURITY authority used by non-SECURITY logon ID	1	2
2117	NON-CNCL authority used by non-NON-CNCL logon ID	1	3
2118	READALL authority used by non-READALL logon ID	1	3
2119	Non-expiring password enabled	2	2
2120	Major administrative activity	2	2
2201	WARNING mode access on data set	1	2
2204	Update on APF data sets	2	2
2205	Data set added to APF list using SETPROG	2	3
2206	Data set removed from APF list using SETPROG	2	2
2207	Data set addition to APF list detected	2	3
2208	Data set removal from APF list detected	2	2
2209	Non-regular access to PCI PAN data	2	2
2210	Non-regular access to clear text PCI PAN data	2	2
2211	Non-regular access to PCI AUTH data	2	2
2212	Access>=READ on sensitive data set	2	2
2213	Access>=UPDATE on sensitive data set	2	2
2214	Action on UPDATE sensitive member	2	2
2301	Default STC logon ID used for STC	3	2
2407	Superuser privileged shell obtained by user	2	2
2409	Extended attribute changed	2	2

Table 5. Predefined Alerts (continued)

ID	Description	Class	Severity
2501	Global security countermeasure added	3	2
2502	Global security countermeasure deleted	1 (*)	4
2503	Global security countermeasure or option changed	1	3
2601	SMF data loss started	1(*)	5
2602	SMF logging resumed after failure	3	2
2603	SVC definition changed	2	3
2604	IBM Health Checker found low severity problem	3	2
2605	IBM Health Checker found medium severity problem	2	3
2606	IBM Health Checker found high severity problem	1	4
2607	SMF record flood detected	1	4
2608	SMF record flood starts dropping records	1	5
2609	Attacks blocked by filter rules are no longer logged	2 (***)	2
2610	Attacks blocked by default filter rules are no longer logged	3 (***)	2
2611	Certain SMF 119 records are no longer written; audit trail incomplete	1 (***)	3
2612	IPv4 or IPv6 filtering support and IPSec tunnel support deactivated	1 (***)	4
2613	TCP or UDP ports below 1024 are not reserved any more	1 (***)	4
2614	The security class of an interface has changed	2 (***)	2
2615	IP filter rules changed	2 (***)	2
2802	zSecure Server connection lost	2	3
2804	Tivoli Workload Scheduler job has not started	2	3
2805	Tivoli Workload Scheduler job is late	2	3
2806	Tivoli Workload Scheduler job has failed	2	3

(*) When this alert is issued, a fast response is required.

(**) This alert is included in alert 1503, so there is little point in activating it if they have the same receiver set.

(***) The class and severity of this alert is identical to that of its RACF counterpart.

The Severity column lists the severity levels that Tivoli Enterprise Console and IBM Tivoli NetView associate with alerts. Severity levels range from 0 to 5:

Table 6. Tivoli Enterprise Console and NetView severity levels

Severity	Meaning in Tivoli Enterprise Console	Meaning in NetView
0	Harmless	Cleared
1	Unknown	Indeterminate
2	Warning	Warning
3	Minor	Minor error

Table 6. Tivoli Enterprise Console and NetView severity levels (continued)

Severity	Meaning in Tivoli Enterprise Console	Meaning in NetView
4	Critical	Critical
5	Fatal	Major

The alerts are communicated through alert messages that are available in the following different formats:

- email
- text message
- WTO
- SNMP trap
- UNIX syslog

See “Overview” on page 3.

Sample emails and text messages are shown with each individual predefined alert in this chapter. The SNMP trap format is explained in Appendix A, “SNMP output,” on page 129.

The rest of this chapter explains the general layout of the email format and describes the predefined alerts in detail, divided in functional categories. If an alert can be configured, it is explained here.

Each alert requires certain SMF record types to be logged or specific WTO messages to be issued. Most predefined alerts require SMF type 80, RACF processing. It is assumed that you log these SMF types. All other requirements are shown with each individual alert. SMF logging is controlled per subsystem.

Standard email layout

All email alert messages have similar output. See the following example of an email that can be sent.

```
From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Audited program ASMIDFA has been executed
```

```
Alert: Audited program ASMIDFA has been executed
A program which auditing specified has been executed
```

```
Alert id      1302
Date and time 07Feb2003 13:44:43.20
Program      ASMIDFA
Data set     SHARED.LINKLIB
User         C##BDV2 DIONNE VONT
Job name     C##BDV2
System ID    DINO
```

You can see here that a program called ASMIDFA from the data set SHARED.LINKLIB has started execution. The user that executed the program is C##BDV2, and the user name is *Dionne Vont*. The program executes in job C##BDV2 on system DINO.

The sender of the email can be configured using the interface. The default is: *jobname at system name*. The subject header and the body of the email are

generated by the CARLa code. The email subject is the same as the first line in the email body; however, formatting might vary slightly. Below that line is a general header that describes the event.

Below the headers of the alert is the section with details. The first line contains the alert ID. This number can be used to find the corresponding alert using SNMP, WTO, or SMS output and for finding the right entry in this documentation. The second line shows the date and time the event occurred. This is followed by the alert-specific fields. Finally, the job name, job ID, and system name are listed if available.

Predefined RACF alerts

The following topics describe the categories of RACF alerts that are shipped with zSecure Alert.

User alerts

Logon by unknown user (1101)

This alert is triggered on two occasions:

1. A user, unknown to RACF, successfully logs on to TSO. This user is defined in SYS1.UADS, but not in RACF.
2. A batch job is submitted by NJE on another system for this system. On the receiving system, the user that submitted the job is not defined to RACF.

To receive this alert, you must log SMF record type 30 subtype 1.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Logon by unknown user

Alert: logon by unknown user
A user unknown to RACF logged on or submitted a batch job

Alert id	1101
Date and time	10Feb2003 06:53:16.60
User	*
Result	Success
Job name + id	TSOB JOB00042
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1101: Logon by unknown user * job TSOB

Alert 1101: Logon by unknown user * job TSOB

The generated email report always shows a '*' for the user and whether the logon succeeded.

It can be difficult to find the source of the unknown logon because the system only logs a '*' as user. However, you can verify that the SYS1.UADS data set does not contain any user IDs that are not defined in RACF. Additionally, to stop job submissions by undefined users you can set SETROPTS JES(BATCHALLRACF).

Logon with emergency user ID (1102)

An alert is sent if a user ID that is meant for emergencies is used for TSO logon or batch job submission.

To receive this alert, you must log SMF record type 30 subtype 1.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Emergency user IBMUSER logged on

Alert: Emergency user IBMUSER logged on
Successful logon or job submit with a userid meant for emergencies

Alert id	1102
Date and time	03Feb2003 09:38:44.94
User	IBMUSER IBM DEFAULT USER
Result	Success
Job name + id	IBMUSER TSU05900
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1102: emergency user IBMUSER logged on

Alert 1102: emergency user IBMUSER logged on

The generated email report shows the user ID used to log on to the system and whether the logon succeeded.

You can configure the alert for your site. When selecting the alert, you are prompted with a panel. You can enter up to 10 user IDs that must be used only in case of emergencies. See “Emergency user configuration (alerts 1102 and 2102)” on page 117.

Logon of a user ID with uid(0) (UNIX superuser) (1103)

An alert is sent if a user ID with UNIX uid 0 is used to logon to TSO or OMVS. It is a sound UNIX principle that you must not log on with superuser privileges but instead use 'su' when needed.

To receive this alert, you must log SMF record type 30 subtype 1.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Superuser C##BMR1 logon

Alert: Superuser C##BMR1 logon
A user with uid(0) has logged on

Alert id	1103
Date and time	03Feb2003 09:38:44.94
User	C##BMR1 MARY ROBERTSON
Logon to	TSO
Result	Success
Job name + id	C##BMR1 TSU05900
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1103: Superuser C##BMR1 logon to TSO

Alert 1103: Superuser C##BMR1 logon to TSO

The generated email report shows the user ID that was used to log on to the system, on which subsystem the logon took place, TSO or OMVS, and the status of the logon.

If you receive these alerts, you must remove the uid 0 definition in the OMVS segments of these users. Use profiles in the UNIXPRIV class and BPX.SUPERUSER in the FACILITY class to give users selective superuser authority.

Highly authorized user revoked for password (1104)

This alert is triggered when a user with a system-level authority (SPECIAL, OPERATIONS, or AUDITOR) is revoked because of excessive invalid password attempts. It can be caused by an intruder who is trying to guess the password of the user.

Note: You must take care not all your users with system authority get revoked at the same time. You must have some procedure to make sure that at least one unrevoked user ID with SPECIAL authority is reinstated.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Highly authorized user C##CX44 revoked for password violations

Alert: Highly authorized user C##CX44 revoked for password violations
System-level authorized user revoked due to excessive password attempts

Alert id	1104
Date and time	07Feb2003 14:58:27.13
User	C##CX44 TEST USER
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1104: Highly authorized user C##CX44 revoked for password violations

Alert 1104: Highly authorized user C##CX44 revoked for password violations

The report shows the user ID and accompanying programmer name that is revoked for excessive password violations.

System authority granted (1105)

An alert is generated when a user obtains system-level authority (SPECIAL, OPERATIONS, AUDITOR, or CLAUTH).

To receive this alert, you must have SETROPTS setting AUDIT(USER) and SAUDIT enabled.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: System authority granted to C##BMR2

Alert: System authority granted to C##BMR2
System-level authority granted to user

Alert id	1105
Date and time	29May2000 13:25:12.42
Authority	SPECIAL
Granted to	C##BMR2 MARY ROBERTSON
Result	Success
RACF command	ALTUSER C##BMR2 SPECIAL
User	C##BMR1 MARY ROBERTSON
Job name	C##BMR1
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1105: System authority granted to C##BMR2 by C##BMR1

Alert 1105: System authority SPECIAL granted to C##BMR2 by C##BMR1

The report shows the system authority that is granted, the user that is granted the authority, the complete RACF command, and the result of the command. Additionally, it shows the user that performed the RACF command.

System authority removed (1106)

An alert is sent when a system-level authority, that is, SPECIAL, OPERATIONS, AUDITOR, or CLAUTH, is removed from a user.

To receive this alert, you must have SETROPTS setting AUDIT(USER) and SAUDIT enabled.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: System authority removed from C##BMR1

Alert: System authority removed from C##BMR2
System-level authority removed from user

Alert id	1106
Date and time	29May2000 13:25:16.15
Authority	SPECIAL
Removed from	C##BMR2 MARY ROBERTSON
Result	Success
RACF command	ALTUSER C##BMR2 NOSPECIAL
User	C##BMR1 MARY ROBERTSON
Job name	C##BMR1
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1106: System authority removed from C##BMR2 by C##BMR1

Alert 1106: System authority SPECIAL removed from C##BMR2 by C##BMR1

The report shows the removed authority, the user whose authority is removed, the complete RACF command, and the result of the command. In addition, it shows the user that performed the RACF command.

Group authority granted (1107)

If a group-level authorization, that is, SPECIAL, OPERATIONS, or AUDITOR, is granted to a user, an alert is generated.

To receive this alert, you must have SETROPTS setting SAUDIT, AUDIT(USER), or AUDIT(GROUP) enabled.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Group authority granted to C##AR02 in C##C

Alert: Group authority granted to C##AR02 in C##C
CONNECT Group-level authority granted to user

Alert id	1107
Date and time	02Feb2003 09:47:23.29
Authority	SPECIAL
Granted to	C##AR02 RICK OXSON
Connected to	C##C
Result	Success

RACF command	CONNECT C##AR02 AUTHORITY(USE) GROUP(C##C) NOADSP NOAUDITOR NOGRPACC NOOPERATIONS OWNER(C##C) RESUME SPECIAL UACC(NONE)
User	C##BERT ERWIN RETTICH
Job name	CRRAC#17
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1107: Group authority granted to C##AR02 in C##C

Alert 1107: Group authority SPECIAL granted to C##AR02 in C##C

The generated email report shows the granted authority, the user that is granted the authority, the group the authorized user is in, the complete RACF command, the result of the command, and the user who executed the command.

Note: The RACF command field shows the specified command keywords and the default keywords so it can become rather long.

Group authority removed (1108)

An alert is generated if a group-level authorization, that is, SPECIAL, OPERATIONS, or AUDITOR, is removed from a user, or a user with such authorizations is removed from a group.

To receive this alert, you must have SETROPTS setting SAUDIT, AUDIT(USER), or AUDIT(GROUP) enabled.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Group authority removed for C##AR02 in C##C

Alert: Group authority removed for C##AR02 in C##C
Group-level authority removed from user

Alert id	1108
Date and time	02Feb2003 09:47:23.29
Authority	OPERATIONS AUDITOR
Removed from	C##AR02 RICK OXSON
Connected to	C##C
Result	Success
RACF command	CONNECT C##AR02 AUTHORITY(USE) GROUP(C##C) NOADSP NOAUDITOR NOGRPACC NOOPERATIONS OWNER(C##C) RESUME SPECIAL UACC(NONE)
User	C##BERT ERWIN RETTICH
Job name	CRRAC#17
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1108: Group authority removed for C##AR02 in C##C

Alert 1108: Group authority OPERATIONS AUDITOR removed for C##AR02 in C##C

The report shows the removed authority, or <CONNECT REMOVED> if the connection is removed, the user whose authority is removed, the group that the user is in, the complete RACF command, the result of the command, and the user who executed the command.

Note: The RACF command field shows the specified command keywords and the default keywords so it can become rather long.

SPECIAL authority used by non-SPECIAL user (1109)

This alert is generated when a user without system or group special authorization executes a command with the group or system special authorizations. It means that the user has the potential to successfully execute commands that require group or system special, but does not have SPECIAL authority itself. This condition can be set by APF-authorized software.

Note: You must analyze the SMF records cut for the job up to the time the alert was issued as a first attempt to identify the responsible program.

To receive this alert, you must have SETROPTS setting SAUDIT enabled.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: non-SPECIAL user C##BDV1 issued SPECIAL command

Alert: non-SPECIAL user C##BDV1 issued SPECIAL command
SPECIAL authority used for RACF command by user without SPECIAL

Alert id	1109
Date and time	17Jan2003 03:00:16.89
User	C##BDV1 DIONNE VONT
RACF command	ADDSD 'SYS1.APF.NODATA.**' NOSET
Result	Success
Job name	C##BDV1
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1109: non-SPECIAL user C##BDV1 issued SPECIAL command

Alert 1109: non-SPECIAL user C##BDV1 issued SPECIAL command ADDSD
'SYS1.APF.NODATA.**' NOSET

The report shows the user, the RACF command the user executed, and whether the command succeeded.

If the command is issued without valid authorization, you must examine the cause for the special authorization and remove it.

Non-OPERATIONS user accessed data set with OPERATIONS (1110)

An alert is generated when a user without system or group operations accesses a data set with group or system operation authority. It implies that the user can access all data sets in the scope of the user unless explicitly denied by an ACL. This situation can arise if an APF-authorized program sets group or system operations authority in the RACF control blocks.

Note: You must analyze the SMF records cut for the job up to the time the alert got issued as a first attempt to identify the responsible program.

To receive this alert, you must have SETROPTS setting OPERAUDIT enabled.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: non-OPERATIONS user D##MUY accessed data set with OPERATIONS

Alert: non-OPERATIONS user D##MUY accessed data set with OPERATIONS
Successful data set access using OPERATIONS by user without OPERATIONS

Alert id	1110
Date and time	22Jan2003 10:26:16.81
Data set	D##BEV.GBS001.D##Y.DC107SCK.BV0GBS00
Access	ALTER
User	D##MUY
Result	Success
Job name	D##MUY
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1110: non-OPERATIONS user D##MUY accessed (ALTER) with OPERATIONS data set D##BEV.GBS001.D##Y.DC107SCK.BV0GBS00

Alert 1110: non-OPERATIONS user D##MUY accessed (ALTER) with OPERATIONS data set D##BEV.GBS001.D##Y.DC107SCK.BV0GBS00

The alert shows the data set that is accessed, the access level, the accessing user, and the result of the action.

If the access is non-valid, you must examine the reason why these OPERATIONS authorizations are set, and remove the cause if necessary.

Invalid password attempts exceed limit (1111)

An alert is sent if too many failed logon attempts are made specifying an invalid password for one specific user ID in a specific time window. The measurement interval is the sum of the REPORT options **Interval** and **AverageInterval**. See the information about the REPORT command in the *IBM Security zSecure CARLa-Driven Components: Installation and Deployment Guide*.

"Too many" is defined as 5 or more. If you want to use another limit, you must copy the alert to an installation defined alert. Adapt all four instances of #history(nd,<5), #total(nd,>=5),

in the new skeleton member to use the limit you want instead of 5.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Invalid password attempts exceed limit for C##BSG2

Alert: Invalid password attempts exceed limit for C##BSG2
Excessive number of password attempts by user

Alert id	1111
Date and time	03Mar2003 13:30:04.39 - 03Mar2003 13:39:23.78
Attempts	6
User	C##BSG2 SUSAN GAYNOR
Result	Violation
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1111: Invalid password attempts exceed limit for C##BSG2

Alert 1111: Invalid password attempts exceed limit for C##BSG2

The generated email report shows the interval in which the logon attempts occurred, the number of attempts, the user ID that was used for trying to log on to the system, and the status of the logon; in this alert the logons are always violations.

Currently it is not possible to display the source (terminal) of the logon attempts.

Password history flushed (1112)

An alert is sent if the password for a specific user ID is changed more often than the password history SETROPTS setting in a specific time window. It means that the user flushed the entire password history, enabling reuse of a previous password. The measurement interval is the sum of the REPORT options **Interval** and **AverageInterval**. See the information about the REPORT command in the *IBM Security zSecure CARLa-Driven Components: Installation and Deployment Guide*.

Note: Alerts 1112 and 1113 are related. When a report interval ends while a password history is being flushed, alert 1113 is triggered, while alert 1112 occurs when flushing is complete. If you receive multiple alerts 1113 for the same user, but no alert 1112, it is also likely that the history is being flushed. The user might have taken some more time for it.

To receive this alert, you must have SETROPTS AUDIT(USER) enabled.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Password history flushed for C##BSG2

Alert: Password history flushed for C##BSG2
Repeated password changes flush password history

Alert id	1112
Date and time	05Mar2003 11:47:11.21 - 03Mar2003 11:47:12.04
Pwd changes	33
User	C##BSG2 SUSAN GAYNOR
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1112: Password history flushed for C##BSG2

Alert 1112: Password history flushed for C##BSG2

The generated email report shows the interval in which the password history flushing occurred, the number of password changes, and the user ID of the user who flushed the password history.

Suspect password changes (1113)

An alert is sent if the password for a specific user ID is changed too often in a specific time window, but not so often that the password history is flushed completely, which would result in alert 1112. "Too often" is defined as five times or more. If you want to use another limit, you must copy the alert to an installation defined alert. Adapt all four instances of

```
#history(nd,<5) #total(nd,>=5),
```

in the new skeleton member to use the desired limit.

To receive this alert, you must have SETROPTS AUDIT(USER) enabled.

For further explanation, see "Password history flushed (1112)."

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Suspect password changes for C##BSG2

Alert: Suspect password changes for C##BSG2
Excessive number of password changes by user

Alert id	1113
Date and time	03Mar2003 15:17:12.32 - 03Mar2003 15:17:13.11
Pwd changes	7
User	C##BSG2 SUSAN GAYNOR
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1113: Suspect password changes for C##BSG2

Alert 1113: Suspect password changes for C##BSG2

The generated email report shows the interval in which the password changes occurred, the number of password changes, and the user ID that has its password changed many times.

Connect authority>=CREATE set (1114)

An alert is sent when an authority level of CREATE or higher is set on a connection. Such a level allows decentralized administrators to add group data set profiles. If the level is CONNECT or JOIN, the user can furthermore connect any existing user to the group in question. If the level is JOIN, the user can also create subgroups and give out connect authorities for the group to other users. Furthermore, if the user has class authority (CLAUTH) in the USER class, new users can be created in the group as well.

To receive this alert, you must have at least SETROPTS setting AUDIT(USER) enabled.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Connect authority JOIN set for C##BSG2 in C##B

Alert: Connect authority JOIN set for C##BSG2 in C##B
High authority specified when adding or altering a connect

Alert id	1114
Date and time	08May2003 10:11:09.51
Authority	JOIN
Granted to	C##BSG2 SUSAN GAYNOR
Connected to	C##B
Result	Success
RACF command	ALTUSER C##BSG2 AUTHORITY(JOIN) GROUP(C##B)
User	C##BERT ERWIN RETTICH
Job name	CBERT#17
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1114: Connect authority JOIN set for C##BSG2 in C##B

Alert 1114: Connect authority JOIN set for C##BSG2 in C##B

The generated email report shows the granted group-authority, the user and the target group, the complete RACF command, the result of the command, and the user who executed the command.

Note: The RACF command field shows the specified command keywords and the default keywords, so it can become rather long.

Too many violations (1115)

This corrective alert is generated when more violations than a configured number are recorded for a specific user ID in the interval as specified with the zSecure Alert REPORT option **AverageInterval**. For additional information, see the information about the REPORT command in the *IBM Security zSecure CARLa-Driven Components: Installation and Deployment Guide*.

To generate this alert, RACF access violations must be recorded. Access violations are recorded depending on the LOGOPTION settings for the class and the audit settings of the profile.

This alert is corrective in that you can specify to automatically revoke the violating user ID. In addition, with a zSecure Admin license you can choose to generate a CKGRACF DISABLE command instead of an ALTUSER REVOKE command.

The report format of the alert depends on whether you decided to let zSecure Alert perform a corrective action.

The email format of the alert without a corrective action is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: 15 violations recorded for user C2RMUS01

Alert: 15 violations recorded for user C2RMUS01
Number of violation exceeds the configured 10

Alert id	1115
Date and time	09Mar2005 14:49:55.90 - 09Mar2005 14:54:57.89
Violations	15
User	C2RMUS01
System ID	DINO

Time	Intent	Allowed	Class	Resource
14:49	READ	NONE	JESSPOOL	JES2DINO.DFHSM.DFHSM.STC05782.D0000002.J ESMSG LG
14:49	READ	NONE	JESSPOOL	JES2DINO.DFHSM.DFHSM.STC05782.D0000003.J ESJCL
14:50	READ	NONE	JESSPOOL	JES2DINO.DFHSM.DFHSM.STC05782.D0000004.J ESYSMSG
14:50	READ	NONE	JESSPOOL	JES2DINO.DFHSM.DFHSM.STC05782.D0000101.?
14:51	READ	NONE	JESSPOOL	JES2DINO.DFHSM.DFHSM.STC05782.D0000104.?

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1115: 15 violations recorded for user C2RMUS01

Alert 1115: 15 violations recorded for user C2RMUS01

When you decide to generate an ALU REVOKE command for the violating user ID, the text is changed into:

User C2RMUS01 revoked after 15 violations

When you decide to generate a CKGRACF DISABLE command for the violating user ID, the text is changed into:

User C2RMUS01 disabled with schedule DIS#VIOL after 15 violations

This alert can be customized for your organization. When you select the alert, you are prompted with a panel. In the panel, you can specify the number of violations

you consider being excessive. Furthermore, you can specify up to 10 user IDs or user ID masks to be excluded. See “Major administrative activity (1120 & 2120) configuration” on page 119.

Non-expiring password enabled (1119)

An alert is sent when a non-expiring password is set for a user ID by issuing the PASSWORD NOINTERVAL command.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: User C##ASCH assigned non-expiring password for C##ABRJ

Alert: User C##ASCH assigned non-expiring password for C##ABRJ
User has been assigned a non-expiring password

Alert id	1119
Date and time	03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
User	C##ABRJ JOHN BROWN
Result	Success
Issued by	C##ASCH SIRAM CHRISTIAN
Job name	C##ASCHL
System ID	DINO
Command	PASSWORD C##ABRJ NOINTERVAL

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 1119: User C##ASCH assigned non-expiring password for C##ABRJ

Alert 1119: User C##ASCH assigned non-expiring password for C##ABRJ

The alert shows the command issuer and the user ID for which the non-expiring password was set.

Major administrative activity (1120)

An alert is sent when more RACF commands than a configured number are recorded for a specific user ID in the interval as specified with the zSecure Alert REPORT option **AverageInterval**.

For more information about the zSecure Alert REPORT option **AverageInterval**, see the information about the REPORT command in *IBM Security zSecure CARLa-Driven Components: Installation and Deployment Guide*.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: 126 commands recorded for user CDADMIN

Alert: 126 commands recorded for user CDADMIN
Number of commands exceeds the configured 100

Alert id	1120
Date and time	03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
User	CDADMIN BATCH ADMIN JOB
System ID	DINO

Time	Event	Event description
14:30	ALTUSER	Altuser command (Success:No violations detected)
14:30	ALTUSER	Altuser command (Success:No violations detected)
.....

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 1120: 126 commands recorded for user CDADMIN

Alert 1120: 126 commands recorded for user CDADMIN

The alert includes the user ID, the number of commands that are issued, and a list of events.

This alert can be customized for your organization. When you select the alert, you are prompted with a panel. In the panel, you can specify the number of violations you consider being excessive. Furthermore, you can specify up to 10 user IDs or user ID masks to be excluded. See “Major administrative activity (1120 & 2120) configuration” on page 119.

Protected status removed (1121)

An alert is sent when the protected status for a user ID is removed by issuing the ALTUSER PASSWORD command.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO

Subject: Alert: User C##ASCH removed protected status from COLLSTC

Alert: User C##ASCH removed protected status from COLLSTC
Protected status removed

Alert id	1121
Date and time	03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
Removed from	COLLSTC COLLECT TASK
Result	Success
User	C##ASCH SIRAM CHRISTIAN
Job name	C##ASCHL
System ID	DINO
Command	ALTUSER COLLSTC PASSWORD(<password>)

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 1121: User C##ASCH removed protected status from COLLSTC

Alert 1121: User C##ASCH removed protected status from COLLSTC

The alert shows the command issuer and the user ID for which the protected status was removed.

Data set alerts

This section describes the predefined alerts for data set access and data set profile changes.

WARNING mode access on data set (1201)

A data set is accessed and access is granted because of warning mode. See also “WARNING mode access on general resource (1303)” on page 67.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO

Subject: Alert: WARNING mode READ on data set CDS.SCDSSAMP

Alert: WARNING mode READ on data set CDS.SCDSSAMP
Data set access granted due to warning mode

Alert id	1201
Date and time	21Jan2003 09:11:11.01
Data set	CDS.SCDSSAMP
Granted access	READ

Normal access	NONE
Profile	CDS.SCDs*
User	C##BMR1 MARY ROBERTSON
Job name	C##BMR1
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1201: WARNING mode READ by C##BMR1 on data set CDS.SCDSSAMP

Alert 1201: WARNING mode READ by C##BMR1 on data set CDS.SCDSSAMP

The reports show the data set, the user that requested access to it, the profile against which the access is checked, the access that is granted, and the normal access that would have been granted if the profile had not been in WARNING mode.

A profile in WARNING mode can grant any access to the resource, including what the profile would not allow otherwise. WARNING mode is typically used to analyze what the effects of the access settings of a profile are before the access control is enforced. It functions as a temporary measure to overcome production problems. If you receive these alerts, you must verify whether the access must be granted. When confirmed, change the access settings of the profile accordingly. If this access is not supposed to occur, take remedial action as required.

UACC>=UPDATE on a DATASET profile (1202)

An alert is generated if a UACC equal to or higher than UPDATE is specified on a data set profile. If you want to receive alerts even when the specified UACC is equal to READ, you can use the next alert. See “UACC>NONE on a DATASET profile (1203)” on page 59.

To receive this alert, you must have SETROPTS setting AUDIT(DATASET) enabled.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: UACC>=UPDATE set: C##QAP2.ONZI.**

Alert: UACC>=UPDATE set: C##QAP2.ONZI.**
High UACC specified when adding or altering a data set profile

Alert id	1202
Date and time	04Feb2003 01:12:18.45
Profile	C##QAP2.ONZI.**
UACC	UPDATE
Result	Success
RACF command	ALTDSO 'C##QAP2.ONZI.**' UACC(UPDATE)
User	C##QAP2 ALEXANDER POUVIER
Job name	C##QAP2
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1202: UACC>=UPDATE set by C##QAP2 : C##QAP2.ONZI.**

Alert 1202: UACC>=UPDATE set: C##QAP2.ONZI.** UACC set to UPDATE by C##QAP2

The report shows the changed profile, the specified UACC, the complete RACF command, the result of the command, and the user who executed the command.

UACC>NONE on a DATASET profile (1203)

If a UACC higher than NONE is specified on a data set profile, an alert is generated. If you want to receive alerts only when the specified UACC is higher than READ, you can use the previous alert. See “UACC>=UPDATE on a DATASET profile (1202)” on page 58.

To receive this alert, you must have SETROPTS setting AUDIT(DATASET) enabled.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: UACC>NONE set: C##QAP2.ONZI.**

Alert: UACC>NONE set: C##QAP2.ONZI.**
High UACC specified when adding or altering a data set profile

Alert id	1203
Date and time	04Feb2003 01:12:18.45
Profile	C##QAP2.ONZI.**
UACC	UPDATE
Result	Success
RACF command	ALTDSO 'C##QAP2.ONZI.**' UACC(UPDATE)
User	C##QAP2 ALEXANDER POUVIER
Job name	C##QAP2
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1203: UACC>NONE set by C##QAP2 : C##QAP2.ONZI.**

Alert 1203: UACC>NONE set: C##QAP2.ONZI.** UACC set to UPDATE by C##QAP2

The report shows the changed profile, the specified UACC, the complete RACF command, the result of the command, and the user who executed the command.

Update on APF data set (1204)

An alert is sent when an APF-authorized data set is updated.

To generate this alert, RACF successful update access must be recorded. This is the case if either AUDIT(success(update)) or GLOBALAUDIT(success(update)) has been specified for the relevant profiles. The necessary commands can be created using the zSecure Audit VERIFY SENSITIVE statement.

You can specify the privileged user and groups for which the alert must not be generated with SE.A.S option **Privileged users and groups for UPDATE on APF data sets**.

Note:

- You might want to refresh the CKFREEZE data set that contains the environmental data. If the APF list has been updated, for example, through a SETPROG command, issue a MODIFY C2POLICE, COLLECT command to obtain the current list of APF-authorized data sets.
- This alert does not take volume names into account. It can trigger on updates to any data set with a name that occurs in the current APF list.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Update by C##ASCH on APF data set C##A.D.C##NEW.APF.LOAD

Alert: Update by C##ASCH on APF data set C##A.D.C##NEW.APF.LOAD

APF data set successfully updated

Alert id	1204
Date and time	03Feb2003 10:12:05.30
Data set	C##A.D.C##NEW.APF.LOAD
Access	ALTER
User	C##ASCH SIRAM CHRISTIAN
Result	Success
Job name	C##ASCHL
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1204: Update by user C##ASCH on APF data set
C##A.D.C##NEW.APF.LOAD

Alert 1204: Update by user C##ASCH on APF data set C##A.D.C##NEW.APF.LOAD

The alert shows the data set that was updated, the employed access level, and the user who accessed the data set.

Data set added to APF list using SETPROG (1205)

An alert is generated when a data set is dynamically added to the APF list using the SET PROG or SETPROG command.

To generate this alert, WTO message CSV410I must be available, and selected for processing.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Data set added to APF list using SETPROG: SYSPROG.APF.LOAD

Alert: Data set added to APF list using SETPROG:SYSPROG.APF.LOAD
A data set is dynamically added to the APF list

Alert id	1205
Date and time	21Feb2003 11:44:36.71
Data set	SYSPROG.APF.LOAD
Volume	<SMS MANAGED>
Console ID	R##SLIN
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1205: Data set added to APF list using SETPROG from console R##SLIN:
SYSPROG.APF.LOAD

Alert 1205: Data set added to APF list using SETPROG from console R##SLIN:
SYSPROG.APF.LOAD on volume <SMS MANAGED>

The alert shows the data set added to the APF list, on what volume the data set resides, or <SMS MANAGED> if it is managed by SMS. It shows the name of the console from which the user entered the SET PROG or SETPROG command, if entered from SDSF. The console name defaults to the user ID.

Data set removed from APF list using SETPROG (1206)

An alert is generated when a data set is dynamically removed from the APF list using the SET PROG or SETPROG command.

To generate this alert, WTO message CSV410I must be available, and selected for processing.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Data set removed from APF list using SETPROG: SYSPROG.APF.LOAD

Alert: Data set removed from APF list using SETPROG: SYSPROG.APF.LOAD
A data set is dynamically removed from the APF list

Alert id 1206
Date and time 21Feb2003 11:44:36.71
Data set SYSPROG.APF.LOAD
Volume <SMS MANAGED>
Console ID R##SLIN
System ID DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1206: Data set removed from APF list using SETPROG from console R##SLIN:
SYSPROG.APF.LOAD

Alert 1206: APF Data set removed from APF list using SETPROG from console R##SLIN:
SYSPROG.APF.LOAD on volume <SMS MANAGED>

The alert shows the data set removed from the APF list. It also shows on what volume the data set resides, or <SMS MANAGED> if it is managed by SMS. It shows the name of the console from which the user entered the SET PROG or SETPROG command, if entered from SDSF. The console name defaults to the user ID.

Data set addition to APF list detected (1207)

This alert is generated when a data set is added to the APF list by any method.

This alert includes use of the SET PROG or SETPROG command and use of other products. To generate this alert, Extended Monitoring must be active. This alert is based on a comparison of two system snapshots. It does not provide any information about the user ID or jobname that was used to add the data set or the process that was used to perform the addition.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Data set addition to APF list detected: SYSPROG.APF.LOAD

Alert: Data set addition to APF list detected: SYSPROG.APF.LOAD
An addition of a data set to the APF list has been detected

Alert id 1207
Data set SYSPROG.APF.LOAD
Volume <SMS MANAGED>
System ID DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1207: Data set addition to APF list detected: SYSPROG.APF.LOAD
Alert 1207: Data set addition to APF list detected: SYSPROG.APF.LOAD
on volume <SMS MANAGED>

The alert shows the data set that was added to the APF list. It also shows on what volume the data set resides (or <SMS MANAGED> if it is managed by SMS). This alert is based on a comparison of two system snapshots. It does not provide any information about the user ID or jobname that was used to add the data set or the process that was used to perform the addition.

Data set removal from APF list detected (1208)

This alert is generated when a data set is removed from the APF list by any method.

To generate this alert, Extended Monitoring must be active. This alert is based on a comparison of two system snapshots. It does not provide any information about the user ID, jobname that was used to remove the data set, or the process that was used to perform the removal.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Data set addition to APF list detected: SYSPROG.APF.LOAD

Alert: Data set removal from APF list detected: SYSPROG.APF.LOAD
A removal of a data set from the APF list has been detected

Alert id 1208
Data set SYSPROG.APF.LOAD
Volume <SMS MANAGED>
System ID DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1208: Data set removal from APF list detected: SYSPROG.APF.LOAD
Alert 1208: Data set removal from APF list detected: SYSPROG.APF.LOAD
on volume <SMS MANAGED>

The alert shows the data set that was removed from the APF list. It also shows on what volume the data set resides (or <SMS MANAGED> if it is managed by SMS). This alert is based on a comparison of two system snapshots. It does not provide any information about the user ID, jobname that was used to remove the data set, or the process that was used to perform the removal.

Non-regular access to PCI PAN data (1209)

An alert is sent for a successful non-regular READ or higher access to a PCI PAN (credit card Primary Account Number) data set.

To generate this alert, RACF successful read and update access must be recorded. This is the case if either AUDIT(success(read)) or GLOBALAUDIT(success(read)) has been specified for the relevant profiles.

You can specify the PCI PAN data sets and the privileged user and groups for which the alert should not be generated with option SE.A.P.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert 1209: READ access by C##ASCH on PCI-PAN data set C##A.D.C##NEW.PAN

Alert 1209: READ access by C##ASCH on PCI-PAN data set C##A.D.C##NEW.PAN
Non-regular access

Alert id 1209
Date and time 03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
Data set C##A.D.C##NEW.APF.LOAD
Sensitivity PCI-PAN
Access READ
User C##ASCH SIRAM CHRISTIAN
Result Success
Job name C##ASCHL
System ID DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1209: READ access by C##ASCH on PCI-PAN data set C##A.D.C##NEW.PAN

Alert 1209: READ access by C##ASCH on PCI-PAN data set C##A.D.C##NEW.PAN

The alert shows the data set that was accessed, the access level used (for example READ) and the user who accessed the data set.

Non-regular access to clear text PCI PAN data (1210)

An alert is sent for a successful non-regular READ or higher access to clear text PCI PAN (credit card Primary Account Number) data.

To generate this alert, RACF successful read and update access must be recorded. This is the case if either AUDIT(success(read)) or GLOBALAUDIT(success(read)) has been specified for the relevant profiles.

You can specify the clear PCI PAN data sets and the privileged user and groups for which the alert should not be generated with option SE.A.P.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO

Subject: Alert 1210: READ access by C##ASCH on PCI-PAN-clr data set C##A.D.C##NEW.PAN

Alert 1210: READ access by C##ASCH on PCI-PAN-clr data set C##A.D.C##NEW.PAN
Non-regular access

Alert id	1210
Date and time	03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
Data set	C##A.D.C##NEW.APF.LOAD
Sensitivity	PCI-PAN-clr
Access	READ
User	C##ASCH SIRAM CHRISTIAN
Result	Success
Job name	C##ASCHL
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1210: READ access by C##ASCH on PCI-PAN-clr data set C##A.D.C##NEW.PAN

Alert 1210: READ access by C##ASCH on PCI-PAN-clr data set C##A.D.C##NEW.PAN

The alert shows the data set that was accessed, the access level used (for example READ) and the user who accessed the data set.

Non-regular access to PCI AUTH data (1211)

An alert is sent for a successful non-regular READ or higher access to a PCI AUTH (credit card sensitive authentication data) data set.

To generate this alert, RACF successful read and update access must be recorded. This is the case if either AUDIT(success(read)) or GLOBALAUDIT(success(read)) has been specified for the relevant profiles.

You can specify the PCI AUTH data sets and the privileged user and groups for which the alert should not be generated with option SE.A.P.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert 1211: READ access by C##ASCH on PCI-AUTH data set C##A.D.C##NEW.PAN

Alert 1210: READ access by C##ASCH on PCI-AUTH data set C##A.D.C##NEW.PAN
Non-regular access

Alert id	1211
Date and time	03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
Data set	C##A.D.C##NEW.APF.LOAD
Sensitivity	PCI-AUTH
Access	READ
User	C##ASCH SIRAM CHRISTIAN
Result	Success
Job name	C##ASCHL
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1211: READ access by C##ASCH on PCI-AUTH data set C##A.D.C##NEW.PAN

Alert 1211: READ access by C##ASCH on PCI-AUTH data set C##A.D.C##NEW.PAN

The alert shows the data set that was accessed, the access level used (for example READ) and the user who accessed the data set.

Access>=READ on site sensitive data set (1212)

An alert is sent for a successful non-regular READ or higher access to a site sensitive data set.

To generate this alert, RACF successful read and update access must be recorded. This is the case if either AUDIT(success(read)) or GLOBALAUDIT(success(read)) is specified for the relevant profiles. When you change the audit settings for a profile, ensure that failure auditing is also set as intended.

You can specify the site sensitive data sets and the privileged user and groups for which the alert must not be generated with option SE.A.S. The alert is not generated for resources that already have a sensitivity assigned by zSecure; for example, APF libraries, JES spool data sets, etc.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert 1212: READ access by C##ASCH on site sensitive READ data set C##A.D.C##NEW.MACLIB

Alert 1212: READ access by C##ASCH on site sensitive READ data set C##A.D.C##NEW.MACLIB
Non-regular access

Alert id	1212
Date and time	03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
Data set	C##A.D.C##NEW.MACLIB
Sensitivity	Site-Dsn-R
Access	READ
User	C##ASCH SIRAM CHRISTIAN
Result	Success
Job name	C##ASCHL
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 1212: READ access by C##ASCH on site sensitive READ data set
C##A.D.C##NEW.MACLIB

Alert 1212: READ access by C##ASCH on site sensitive READ data set
C##A.D.C##NEW.MACLIB

The alert shows the data set that was accessed, the access level used (for example READ) and the user who accessed the data set.

Access>=UPDATE on site sensitive data set (1213)

An alert is sent for a successful non-regular UPDATE or higher access to a site sensitive data set.

To generate this alert, RACF successful read and update access must be recorded. This is the case if either AUDIT(success(update)) or GLOBALAUDIT(success(update)) is specified for the relevant profiles. When you change the audit settings for a profile, ensure that failure auditing is also set as intended.

You can specify the sensitive data sets and the privileged user and groups for which the alert must not be generated with option SE.A.S. The alert is not generated for resources that already have a sensitivity assigned by zSecure; for example, APF libraries, JES spool data sets, etc.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert 1213: UPDATE access by C##ASCH on site sensitive UPDATE data set
C##A.D.C##NEW.MACLIB

Alert 1213: UPDATE access by C##ASCH on site sensitive UPDATE data set
C##A.D.C##NEW.MACLIB
Non-regular access

Alert id	1213
Date and time	03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
Data set	C##A.D.C##NEW.MACLIB
Sensitivity	Site-Dsn-U
Access	UPDATE
User	C##ASCH SIRAM CHRISTIAN
Result	Success
Job name	C##ASCHL
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 1213: UPDATE access by C##ASCH on site sensitive UPDATE data set
C##A.D.C##NEW.MACLIB

Alert 1213: UPDATE access by C##ASCH on site sensitive UPDATE data set
C##A.D.C##NEW.MACLIB

The alert shows the data set that was accessed, the access level used (for example UPDATE) and the user who accessed the data set.

Action on UPDATE sensitive member (1214)

An alert is sent for a successful action on an UPDATE sensitive member. This means one of the following actions is performed on a member: INITIALIZE, DELETE, ADD, REPLACE, or RENAME.

You can specify the members and the data sets they are in with SE.A.S. option **UPDATE sensitive members in specific data sets**. You can specify the privileged

user and groups for which the alert must not be generated with SE.A.S option
Privileged users and groups for site UPDATE sensitive resources.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert 1214: Action by C##ASCH on UPDATE sensitive member IEASYS81

Alert 1214: Action by C##ASCH on UPDATE sensitive member IEASYS81
Action on UPDATE sensitive member

Alert id	1214
Date and time	03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
Data set	USER.PARMLIB
Action	REPLACE
Member	IEASYS81
Alias	
Old Member	
User	C##ASCH SIRAM CHRISTIAN
Job name	C##ASCHL
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 1214: REPLACE action by C##ASCH on UPDATE sensitive member IEASYS81

Alert 1214: REPLACE action by C##ASCH on UPDATE sensitive member IEASYS81 in data set USER.PARMLIB

The alert shows the data set and member that was updated and the action that is performed on the member.

General resource alerts

These alerts report on the use of and changes to general resources.

Catchall profile used for STC (1301)

An alert is sent if a started task is checked against a catchall profile in the STARTED class.

To receive this alert, you must set TRACE(YES) with an RALTER STARTED command on the catchall profile. This outputs WTO message IRR812I.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: STARTED/*.* used for STC IEFBR1A .IEFBR1B

Alert: STARTED/*.* used for STC IEFBR1A.IEFBR1B
A started task is checked against a catchall profile

Alert id	1301
Date and time	11Feb2003 18:14:48.78
Profile	*.*
Started task	IEFBR1A
Started jobname	IEFBR1B
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1301: STARTED/*.* used for STC IEFBR1A .IEFBR1B

Alert 1301: STARTED/*.* used for STC IEFBR1A .IEFBR1B

The report shows the matched catchall profile and the started task member and job name. This report does not show the user who began the started task.

You can remove the cause of this alert if you define the member.jobname in the STARTED class. The catchall profile is not checked anymore for this started task.

Audited program has been executed (1302)

Alert when a program that is audited has started execution.

An audited program is protected by a profile in the PROGRAM class that has at least user or auditor auditing for READ successes.

To receive this alert, the relevant profiles in the PROGRAM class must be specified with sufficient auditing enabled. You can set such auditing, for example, through the AUDIT(SUCCESS(READ)) or GLOBALAUDIT(SUCCESS(READ)) keywords on the RDEFINE or RALTER commands.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Audited program ASMIDFA has been executed

Alert: Audited program ASMIDFA has been executed
A program with auditing specified has been executed

Alert id	1302
Date and time	07Feb2003 13:44:43.20
Program	ASMIDFA
Data set	SHARED.LINKLIB
User	C##BDV2 DIONNE VONT
Job name	C##BDV2
System ID	DINO
Audit reason	<reason>

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1302: Audited program ASMIDFA has been executed by C##BDV2 in job C##BDV2

Alert 1302: Audited program ASMIDFA from data set SHARED.LINKLIB has been executed by C##BDV2 in job C##BDV2

The report shows the program that has started execution, the data set where the program resides, the user who executed the program, and the audit reason.

WARNING mode access on general resource (1303)

A profile in a general resource class is checked for access, and access is granted because of warning mode.

A similar alert for data sets is available in “WARNING mode access on data set (1201)” on page 57.

The e-mail format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: WARNING mode access to FACILITY IRR.LISTUSER

Alert: WARNING mode READ on FACILITY IRR.LISTUSER
Resource access granted due to warning mode

Alert id	1303
Date and time	07Feb2003 14:15:09.60
Class	FACILITY

Resource	IRR.LISTUSER
Granted access	READ
Normal access	NONE
Profile	IRR.LISTUSER
User	C##BDV2 DIONNE VONT
Job name	C##BDV2
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1303: WARNING mode READ by C##BDV2 on FACILITY IRR.LISTUSER

Alert 1303: WARNING mode READ by C##BDV2 on FACILITY IRR.LISTUSER

The report shows the class and the name of the resource accessed, the user who requested access to it, and the profile against which the access is checked. It also shows the access that is granted and the normal access that would have been granted if the profile had not been in WARNING mode.

A profile in WARNING mode grants any access to the resource, including what the profile would not allow otherwise. WARNING mode is typically used to analyze what the effects of the access settings of a profile are, before the access control is enforced. It is also used as a temporary measure to overcome production problems. If you receive these alerts, you must verify whether the access must be allowed. If so, change the access settings of the profile accordingly. If this access is not supposed to occur, take remedial action as required.

Trusted or privileged assigned to STC (1306)

An alert is sent when the TRUSTED or PRIVILEGED attribute is assigned to a started task (STC) through an RDEFINE or RALTER command for a profile in the STARTED class.

To receive this alert, you must have SETROPTS setting AUDIT(STARTED) enabled.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: User C##ASCH has allowed any access for STC GRS.*

Alert: User C##ASCH has allowed any access for STC GRS.*
Started Task is now allowed to access any resource

Alert id	1306
Date and time	03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
Result	Success
Issued by	C##ASCH SIRAM CHRISTIAN
Job name	C##ASCHL
System ID	DINO
Command	ralter STARTED GRS.* STDATA(trusted(YES))

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 1306: User C##ASCH has allowed any access for STC GRS.*

Alert 1306: User C##ASCH has allowed any access for STC GRS.*

The alert shows the started profile and the command issuer.

UNIX alerts

The following alerts are triggered when events concerning UNIX files, directories, or programs occur.

UNIX file access violation (1401)

An alert is sent when an access violation occurs on a UNIX file or directory

To generate this alert, SETROPTS setting LOGOPTIONS(FAILURES(DIRACC DIRSRCH FSOBJ)) must be set. Or, the relevant files must have access failure auditing specified by the **chaudit** command.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: UNIX access violation on ./actuator/bin/db2asc

Alert: UNIX access violation on ./actuator/bin/db2asc
Non-authorized UNIX file or directory access

Alert id	1401
Date and time	28May2000 01:10:06.67
Path	./actuator/bin/db2asc
Access type	FACCESS
Intended access	--w-
Granted access	r-x
User	C##BOON OTTO ONSLEY
Job name	C##BOON
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1401: UNIX access violation (--w-) by C##BOON
on ./actuator/bin/db2asc

Alert 1401: UNIX access violation (--w-) by C##BOON on ./actuator/bin/db2asc

The report shows the path of the file or directory, the access type, that is, FACCESS, DIRACCESS, DIRSRCH, the intended access and the granted access, and the user who tried to access the file or directory. If you use a CKFREEZE file created with parameter UNIX=YES, the UNIX path mentioned in the report is an absolute path.

Global write specified when altering file access (1402)

This alert is generated if write access is specified on the <i>other group</i> of permissions of a UNIX file or directory.

To receive this alert, you must have SETROPTS setting LOGOPTIONS(ALWAYS(FSSEC)) enabled. In the absence of a CKFREEZE file created with parameter UNIX=YES and AUTOMOUNT=YES, you might also receive this alert for other non-file UNIX objects.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Global write specified on www/log/access.log

Alert: Global write specified on www/log/access.log
Global write specified when altering file access

Alert id	1402
Date and time	09Feb2003 08:07:01.66
Path	www/log/access.log
Old permissions	rw-r--r--
New permissions	rw-rw-rw-
Result	Success
User	C##BER2 ERWIN RETTICH
Job name	C##BER2
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1402: Global write specified by C##BER2 on www/log/access.log

Alert 1402: Global write specified by C##BER2 on www/log/access.log

The alert shows the path of the file or directory and the old and new permissions. It also shows the result of the **chmod** command and the user who changed the permission mode. If you use a CKFREEZE file created with parameter UNIX=YES, the UNIX path in the report is an absolute path.

Global read specified when altering file access (1403)

This alert is sent if read access is specified on the "other" group of permissions of a UNIX file.

To receive this alert, you must have SETROPTS setting LOGOPTIONS(ALWAYS(FSSEC)) enabled. In the absence of a CKFREEZE file created with parameter UNIX=YES and AUTOMOUNT=YES, you can receive this alert also for other non-file UNIX objects.

The e-mail format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Global read specified on www/log/access.log

Alert: Global read specified on www/log/access.log
Global read specified when altering file access

Alert id	1403
Date and time	09Feb2003 08:05:22.61
Path	www/log/access.log
Old permissions	rw-----
New permissions	rw-r--r--
Result	Success
User	C##BER2 ERWIN RETTICH
Job name	C##BER2
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1403: Global read specified by C##BER2 on www/log/access.log

Alert 1403: Global read specified by C##BER2 on www/log/access.log

The alert shows the path of the file, the old and new permissions, the result of the **chmod** command, and the user who changed the permission mode. If you use a CKFREEZE file created with parameter UNIX=YES, the UNIX path in the report is an absolute path.

Extended attribute changed (1404)

An alert is generated when an extended attribute (that is, APF, program control, or BPX shareas) is set or removed from a UNIX file or program.

This alert was superseded by alert 1409, available on z/OS 1.11 and later. Alert 1409 is much simpler to configure and uses considerably less resources than alert 1404.

To receive alert 1404, you must have at least SETROPTS setting LOGOPTIONS(DEFAULT(FSOBJ)) enabled. Then you can use the z/OS UNIX **chaudit** command to activate successful write auditing for the programs you want audited. If you have not activated successful auditing, the text of the alert as sent out is incomplete, and essential parts (like the alert number and the file

identification) are missing. To avoid the need to set successful auditing for individual files, you might consider setting LOGOPTIONS(ALL(FSOBJ)). However, doing so significantly increases the number of SMF records created. To receive alerts of type 1404, you also cannot define a BPX.SAFFASTPATH profile in the FACILITY class.

For alerts sent by email, an attempt is made to include the actual extended attribute that has been changed. For this to be successful, READ logging on the FACILITY profiles matching BPX.FILEATTR.APF and BPX.FILEATTR.PROGCTL is also needed.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Extended attribute changed: APF

Alert: Extended attribute changed: APF
APF or program control bit changed on UNIX file or directory

Alert id	1404
Date and time	05Feb2003 13:17:52.49
Path	audfrbg
User	C##BERT ERWIN RETTICH
Job name	C##BERT
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1404: APF or program control bit changed by C##BERT on UNIX file or directory audfrbg

Alert 1404: APF or program control bit changed by C##BERT on UNIX file or directory audfrbg

The alert shows the extended attribute that is set or removed. It also shows the path of the file or directory and the user who changed the attribute. If you use a CKFREEZE file created with parameter UNIX=YES, and optionally AUTOMOUNT=YES, specified, the path in the report is an absolute path.

Audited UNIX program has been executed (1405)

An alert is sent if a z/OS UNIX program that has successful execution audit (user or auditor) enabled has started execution.

This alert does not cover programs that have the setuid bit enabled and have a superuser as owner. For more information, see “Superuser privileged UNIX program executed (1406)” on page 72.

To receive this alert, the audited program must be in an HFS file system. You must have at least SETROPTS setting LOGOPTIONS(DEFAULT(FSOBJ)) enabled, and must have no BPX.SAFFASTPATH profile defined in the FACILITY class. Additionally, you must use a CKFREEZE file created with parameter UNIX=YES, and optionally AUTOMOUNT=YES. Alerts are sent only for programs that have their information in the CKFREEZE file.

You can use the z/OS UNIX **chaudit** command to set the successful execution auditing bits on the programs you want audited.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: UNIX program executed: chprot

Alert: UNIX program executed: chprot
A UNIX program with execution auditing specified has been executed.

Alert id	1405
Date and time	11Mar2003 11:05:11.49
Path	/usr/bin/chprot
User	C##BSG2 SUSAN GAYNOR
Job name	C##BSG2
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1405: UNIX program executed by C##BSG2 : /usr/bin/chprot

Alert 1405: UNIX program executed by C##BSG2: /usr/bin/chprot

The alert shows the path of the program and the user who started execution of that program.

Superuser privileged UNIX program executed (1406)

An alert is sent if a UNIX program with setuid enabled and owned by uid 0 has started execution.

The program must have successful execution audit (user or auditor) enabled. Independent of the authorization of the user, these programs run with superuser privileges, and can read and write any file or directory on the UNIX subsystem.

To receive this alert, the audited program must be in an HFS file system. You must have at least SETROPTS setting LOGOPTIONS(DEFAULT(FSOBJ)) enabled, and must have no BPX.SAFFASTPATH profile defined in the FACILITY class. In addition, you must use a CKFREEZE file created with parameter UNIX=YES, and optionally AUTOMOUNT=YES. Alerts are sent only for programs that have their information in the CKFREEZE file.

This alert accompanies alert 1405. That alert sends a message if an audited UNIX program without these special privileges started execution. See “Audited UNIX program has been executed (1405)” on page 71. You can use the accompanying CARLa to generate UNIX command to set auditor execution auditing on all programs that execute with superuser privileges.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Superuser privileged UNIX program executed: rdefcha

Alert: Superuser privileged UNIX program executed: rdefcha
An audited UNIX program started execution with superuser privileges

Alert id	1406
Date and time	13May2003 21:59:05.12
Path	/usr/local/bin/rdefcha
User	C##BSG1 SUSAN GAYNOR
Job name	C##BSG1
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1406: Superuser privileged UNIX program executed: rdefcha

Alert 1406: Superuser privileged UNIX program executed: rdefcha

The alert shows the path of the program that has setuid privileges and the user who started execution of the program.

Superuser privileged shell obtained by user (1407)

An alert is generated when a user uses the UNIX <cmdname>su</cmdname> command to obtain a shell with superuser privileges.

To receive this alert, you must have successful READ logging specified on the BPX.SUPERUSER FACILITY profile.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Superuser privileged shell obtained by user C##BSG1

Alert: Superuser privileged shell obtained by user C##BSG1
A user used su to obtain a shell with superuser privileges

Alert id	1407
Date and time	14May2003 14:15:21.98
User	C##BSG1 SUSAN GAYNOR
Job name	C##BSG1
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1407: Superuser privileged shell obtained by user C##BSG1

Alert 1407: Superuser privileged shell obtained by user C##BSG1

The report shows the user who used **su** to obtain a shell with superuser privileges. This user is able to read and write any file or directory on the UNIX subsystem.

Superuser privileges set on UNIX program (1408)

This alert is generated if the setuid bit is set on a program owned by a UNIX superuser.

A program with these privileges executes with superuser authority, and can thus access any UNIX file or data set.

Note: Changing the owner to uid 0 of a program with setuid enabled resets the setuid bit, so it is not a security exposure.

To receive this alert, you must have SETROPTS setting LOGOPTIONS(ALWAYS(FSSEC)) enabled.

The e-mail format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Superuser privileges set on UNIX program collogs

Alert: Superuser privileges set on UNIX program collogs
The setuid bit is specified on a UNIX program owned by a superuser

Alert id	1408
Date and time	28Mar2003 11:49:33.66
Path	/usr/local/bin/collogs
User	C##BER2 ERWIN RETTICH
Job name	C##BER2
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1408: Superuser privileges set on UNIX program collogs

Alert 1408: Superuser privileges set on UNIX program collogs

The alert shows the path of the program and the user who changed the permission so that the program executes with superuser privileges. If you use a CKFREEZE file created with parameter UNIX=YES, the UNIX path in the report is an absolute path.

Extended attribute changed (1409)

If this alert is activated, a notification message is generated when a change is detected in the extended attributes settings (APF, program control, or _BPX_SHAREAS) for a UNIX file or program. To receive this alert, the level of the z/OS system must be at least 1.11.

The e-mail format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert Extended attribute changed for <Unix-filename>

Alert Extended attribute changed for <Unix-filename>

Alert id	1409
Previous value	<old value>
New value	<new value>
Date and time	Date(9) Time(11)
Path	Unix pathname
User	User(8)Name
Job name	JobName
System id	System

In the e-mail notification, *old value* and *new value* can contain a combination of the following values: Shared library, APF authorized, and Program controlled.

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1409: Extended attribute changed (APS-> APS) by <userid> for <unix file name>.

Alert 1409: Extended attribute changed (APS-> APS) by <userid> for <unix file name>

The extended attributes of a UNIX file *unix file name* changed. The old and new extended attributes are shown between the parentheses. The string APS stands for the extended attributes: APF Authorized, Program controlled, and Shared Library. The command was issued by *userid*.

UID(0) assigned (1410)

An alert is sent when an UID(0) is assigned with the ALTUSER or ADDUSER OMVS(UID(0)) command.

To receive this alert, you must have SETROPTS setting AUDIT(USER) enabled. When the command is issued by a user with the SPECIAL attribute, SETROPTS setting SAUDIT is also sufficient to receive this alert.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: User C##ASCH assigned UID(0) for C##ACS1

Alert: User C##ASCH assigned UID(0) for C##ACS1
User C##ASCH assigned UID(0) for C##ACS1

Alert id	1410
Date and time	03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
User	C##ACS1 ARTHUR SMITH
Result	Success
Issued by	C##ASCH SIRAM CHRISTIAN

Job name C##ASCHL
System ID DINO
Command ALTUSER C##ACS1 OMVS(UID(0))

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 1410: User C##ASCH assigned UID(0) for C##ACS1

Alert 1410: User C##ASCH assigned UID(0) for C##ACS1

The alert shows the user ID that the UID(0) was assigned to and the command issuer.

Permit issued on BPX.SUPERUSER (1411)

An alert is sent when a permit is issued for profile BPX.SUPERUSER in the FACILITY class.

To receive this alert, you must have SETROPTS setting AUDIT(FACILITY) enabled. When the command is issued by a user with the SPECIAL attribute, SETROPTS setting SAUDIT is also sufficient to receive this alert.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: User C##ASCH issued permit on BPX.SUPERUSER for C##ACS1

Alert: User C##ASCH issued permit on BPX.SUPERUSER for C##ACS1
Permit issued for BPX.SUPERUSER

Alert id 1411
Date and time 03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
User C##ACS1 ARTHUR SMITH
Result Success
Issued by C##ASCH SIRAM CHRISTIAN
Job name C##ASCHL
System ID DINO
Command PERMIT BPX.SUPERUSER ID(C##ACS1) ACCESS(READ) CLASS(FACILITY)

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 1411: User C##ASCH issued permit on BPX.SUPERUSER for C##ACS1

Alert 1411: User C##ASCH issued permit on BPX.SUPERUSER for C##ACS1

The alert shows the user ID that the permit was assigned to and the command issuer.

RACF control alerts

These alerts report on RACF SETROPTS setting changes.

Global security countermeasure activated (1501)

An alert is sent when a RACF SETROPTS command tightens the security of the system.

Note: The condition that triggers this alert is a subset of those conditions that trigger alert 1503. The only reason to select both alerts is when you want to send them to different recipients.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Global security countermeasure activated by C##BNA2

Alert: Global security countermeasure activated by C##BNA2
SETROPTS command tightened system security

Alert id	1501
Date and time	23Jan2003 12:13:34.58
RACF command	SETROPTS LOGOPTIONS(NEVER(FACILITY),FAILURES(DATASET))
User	C##BNA2 NICK AFTERSOCK
Result	Success
Job name	C##BNA2
System id	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1501: Global security countermeasure activated by C##BNA2

Alert 1501: Global security countermeasure activated by C##BNA2: SETROPTS
LOGOPTIONS(NEVER(FACILITY),FAILURES(DATASET)) PASSWORD(NOHistory)

The alert shows the executed RACF command, the user that executed the command, and the return status of the command.

Global security countermeasure deactivated (1502)

An alert is generated when a RACF SETROPTS command degraded the security of the system.

This alert ensures a more timely notification through a cell phone message when zSecure Alert is sure that a countermeasure is being deactivated.

Note: The condition that triggers this alert is a subset of those conditions that trigger alert 1503. The only reason to select both alerts is when you want to send them to different recipients.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Global security countermeasure deactivated by C##BNAT

Alert: Global security countermeasure deactivated by C##BNAT
SETROPTS command loosened system security

Alert id	1502
Date and time	23Jan2003 11:51:56.01
RACF command	SETROPTS NOSAUDIT
User	C##BNAT NICK AFTERSOCK
Result	Success
Job name	C##BNAT
System id	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1502: Global security countermeasure deactivated by C##BNAT

Alert 1502: Global security countermeasure deactivated by C##BNAT: SETROPTS ADSP
NOSAUDIT <Ignored>

The alert shows the executed RACF command, the user that executed the command, and the return status of the command.

Global security countermeasure or option changed (1503)

An alert is generated when a RACF SETROPTS command changed the security of the system.

This alert shows the executed RACF command, the user that executed the command, and the return status of the command.

Note: The conditions that trigger alerts 1501 and 1502 are subsets of those conditions that trigger alert 1503. The only reason to select alerts 1501 or 1052 combined with alert 1503 is when you want to send them to different recipients.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Global security countermeasure changed by C##BNAT

Alert: Global security countermeasure changed by C##BNAT
SETROPTS command changed system security

Alert id	1503
Date and time	23Jan2003 11:51:56.01
RACF command	SETROPTS NOSAUDIT
User	C##BNAT NICK AFTERSOCK
Result	Success
Job name	C##BNAT
System id	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1503: Global security countermeasure changed by C##BNAT

Alert 1503: Global security countermeasure changed by C##BNAT: SETROPTS ADSP
NOSAUDIT <Ignored>

RACF Resource class activated (1504)

This alert is generated when a RACF resource class is detected to have been activated.

This alert shows the resource class that was activated. Because this alert is based on a comparison of two system snapshots, it does not provide any information about how the change was accomplished.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at IDFX
Subject: Alert: RACF resource class activated: DASDVOL

Alert: RACF resource class activated: DASDVOL
A change in the status of a RACF resource class has been detected

Alert id	1504
CLASS	DASDVOL
Status	Active
System ID	IDFX

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1504: RACF resource class activated: DASDVOL
Alert 1504: RACF resource class activated: DASDVOL

RACF Resource class deactivated (1505)

This alert is generated when a RACF resource class is detected to have been deactivated.

This alert shows the resource class that was deactivated. Because this alert is based on a comparison of two system snapshots, it does not provide any information about how the change was accomplished.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at IDFX
Subject: Alert: RACF resource class deactivated: DASDVOL

Alert: RACF resource class deactivated: DASDVOL
A change in the status of a RACF resource class has been detected

Alert id 1505
CLASS DASDVOL
Status Inactive
System ID IDFX

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1505: RACF resource class deactivated: DASDVOL
Alert 1505: RACF resource class deactivated: DASDVOL

Global Access Checking table has been changed (1506)

An alert is sent when the global access checking table was changed by using an RDEFINE, RALTER, or RDELETE command for the GLOBAL class.

To receive this alert, you must have SETROPTS setting AUDIT(GLOBAL) enabled.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: User C##ASCH issued command to change the GAC table for class DATASET

Alert: User C##ASCH issued command to change the GAC table for class DATASET
RACF command issued to change the Global Access Checking (GAC) table

Alert id 1506
Date and time 03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
Class GLOBAL
Profile DATASET
Result Success
Issued by C##ASCH SIRAM CHRISTIAN
Job name C##ASCHL
System ID DINO
Command RALTER GLOBAL DATASET ADDMEM('SYS1.BROADCAST'/UPDATE)

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 1506: User C##ASCH issued command to change the GAC table for class DATASET

Alert 1506: User C##ASCH issued command to change the GAC table for class DATASET

The alert shows the global access checking table that was added, deleted, or modified, and the command issuer.

Dynamic Class Descriptor Table has been changed (1507)

An alert is sent when the dynamic Class Descriptor Table (CDT) was changed by using a RDEFINE, RALTER, or RDELETE command for the CDT class.

To receive this alert, you must have SETROPTS setting AUDIT(CDT) enabled.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: User C##ASCH issued command to change the dynamic CDT for class MYCLASS

Alert: User C##ASCH issued command to change the dynamic CDT for class MYCLASS

RACF command issued to change the dynamic CDT

```
Alert id      1507
Date and time 03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
Class         CDT
Profile       MYCLASS
Result        Success
Issued by     C##ASCH SIRAM CHRISTIAN
Job name      C##ASCHL
System ID     DINO
Command       RALTER CDT MYCLASS CDTINFO(DEFAULTTRC(8))
```

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 1507: User C##ASCH issued command to change the dynamic CDT for class MYCLASS

Alert 1507: User C##ASCH issued command to change the dynamic CDT for class MYCLASS

The alert shows the dynamic class descriptor table entry that was added, deleted, or modified, and the command issuer.

Command Verifier deactivated by SETPROG EXIT (1508)

An alert is sent when zSecure Command Verifier is deactivated as the result of a SETPROG EXIT,DELETE,EXITNAME=IRREVVX01,MODNAME=C4RMAIN operator command, or a SET PROG=xx operator command.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Command Verifier deactivated

Alert: Command Verifier deactivated
System messages report the SETPROG EXIT command has been issued

```
Alert id      1508
Date and time 03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
WTO message   CSV420I MODULE C4RMAIN HAS BEEN DELETED FROM EXIT
               IRREVVX01

Console ID    CR@SRT1
System ID     DINO
```

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 1508: Command Verifier deactivated at CR@SRT1 : CSV420I MODULE C4RMAIN HAS BEEN DELETED FROM EXIT IRREVVX01

Alert 1508: Command Verifier deactivated at: CR@SRT1 : CSV420I MODULE C4RMAIN HAS BEEN DELETED FROM EXIT IRREVVX01

The alert shows the SETPROG command response and the console ID that the command was issued from.

System alerts

The following alerts are for monitoring general system events.

SMF data loss started (1601)

This alert is generated when WTO reports that SMF data loss has started. It is reported in messages IEE351I, IEE979W, and IEE989I.

Note: You can choose to activate alert 1602 so that you are notified when the immediate exposure passes.

To receive this alert, you must receive WTO messages IEE351I, IEE979W, and IEE989I.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: SMF data loss started

Alert: SMF data loss started
System messages report that SMF data loss has started

Alert id	1601
Date and time	10Feb2003 16:36:27.07
WTO message	IEE979W SMF DATA LOST - NO BUFFER SPACE
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1601: SMF data loss started. WTO msgid: IEE979W

Alert 1601: SMF data loss started. WTO msgid: IEE979W

The generated email contains only the issued WTO message.

SMF logging resumed after failure (1602)

This alert is generated when SMF data was lost due to full buffers, but the system has resumed logging.

Note: You can choose to activate this alert so that you are notified when the immediate exposure indicated by alert 1601 passes.

To receive this alert, you must log SMF record type 7.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: SMF logging resumed after failure

Alert: SMF logging resumed after failure
SMF data is lost, but the system has resumed logging

Alert id	1602
Start of loss	10Feb2003 17:35:58.97
Date and time	10Feb2003 17:36:27.12
#records lost	4121
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1602: SMF logging resumed after failure. 4121 records lost.

Alert 1602: SMF logging resumed after failure. 4121 records lost.

The generated email contains the start time (Start of loss) and end time (Resume time) of the period when data was lost. It also indicates the number of SMF records that were lost.

SVC definition changed (1603)

This alert is generated when a change is detected in the definition of an SVC in the SVC-table or the SVC ESR-table.

This alert shows the SVC and ESR number of the SVC that was changed. The current address of the SVC code is shown together with the current APF status. Because this alert is based on a comparison of two system snapshots, it does not provide any information about how the change was accomplished.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at IDFX
Subject: Alert: SVC Definition changed: SVC/ESR 220

Alert: SVC Definition changed: SVC/ESR 220
A change in the definition of an SVC has been detected

Alert id 1603
SVC/ESR number 220/
Address 00147080
APF Yes
System ID IDEX

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1603: SVC Definition changed: SVC/ESR 220/
Alert 1603: SVC Definition changed: SVC/ESR 220/ at address 00147080 APF

IBM Health Checker found low severity problem (1604)

This alert is generated when WTO reports that IBM Health Checker found a low severity problem.

This alert is reported in message HZS0001I. To receive this alert, you must receive WTO message HZS0001I.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: IBM Health Checker found low severity problem

Alert: IBM Health Checker found low severity problem
Check found a problem that should be investigated

Alert id 1604
Date and time 10Feb2010 16:36:27.07
System ID DINO
WTO message HZS0001I CHECK(IBMGRS,GRS_SYNCHRES):

ISGH0305E Global Resource Serialization synchronous
RESERVE processing
is not active.

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1604: IBM Health Checker low severity: HZS0001I CHECK(IBMGRS,GRS_SYNCHRES):
Alert 1604: IBM Health Checker low severity: HZS0001I CHECK(IBMGRS,GRS_SYNCHRES):

IBM Health Checker found medium severity problem (1605)

This alert is generated when WTO reports that IBM Health Checker found a medium severity problem.

This alert is reported in message HZS0002E. To receive this alert, you must receive WTO message HZS0002E,

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: IBM Health Checker found medium severity problem

Alert: IBM Health Checker found medium severity problem
Check found a problem that should be investigated

Alert id 1605
Date and time 10Feb2010 16:36:27.07
System ID DINO
WTO message HZS0002E CHECK(IBMASM,ASM_LOCAL_SLOT_USAGE):

ILRH0107E Page data set slot usage threshold met or exceeded

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1605: IBM Health Checker medium severity: HZS0002E CHECK(IBMASM,ASM_LOCAL_SLOT_USAGE):
Alert 1605: IBM Health Checker medium severity: HZS0002E CHECK(IBMASM,ASM_LOCAL_SLOT_USAGE):

IBM Health Checker found high severity problem (1606)

This alert is generated when WTO reports that IBM Health Checker found a high severity problem.

This alert is reported in message HZS0003E. To receive this alert, you must receive WTO message HZS0003E,

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: IBM Health Checker found high severity problem

Alert: IBM Health Checker found high severity problem
Check found a problem that should be investigated

Alert id 1606
Date and time 10Feb2010 16:36:27.07
System ID DINO
WTO message HZS0003E CHECK(IBMxcf,xcf_CDS_SPOF):

IXCH0242E One or more couple data sets have a single point of failure.

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1606: IBM Health Checker high severity: HZS0003E CHECK(IBMxcf,xcf_CDS_SPOF):
Alert 1606: IBM Health Checker high severity: HZS0003E CHECK(IBMxcf,xcf_CDS_SPOF):

SMF record flood detected (1607)

This alert is generated when WTO reports that SMF record flood is detected.

This alert is reported in message IFA780A. To receive this alert, you must receive WTO message IFA780A.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: SMF record flood detected

Alert: SMF record flood detected
System messages report SMF record flood detected
Alert id 1607
Date and time 03May2010 17:50:05.46
WTO message IFA780A SMF RECORD FLOOD MSG FILTER FOR TYPE 40
EXCEEDED AT TIME=
System ID NMPIPL87

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1607: SMF record flood detected. WTO msgid:IFA780A SMF
RECORD FLOOD MSG FILTER FOR TYPE 40 EXCEEDED AT TIME=
Alert 1607: SMF record flood detected. WTO msgid:IFA780A SMF RECORD FLOOD
MSG FILTER FOR TYPE 40 EXCEEDED AT TIME=

SMF record flood detected (1608)

This alert is generated when WTO reports that SMF record flood starts dropping records.

This alert is reported in message IFA782A. To receive this alert, you must receive WTO message IFA782A.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: SMF record flood starts dropping records

Alert: SMF record flood starts dropping records
System messages report SMF record flood starts dropping records
Alert id 1608
Date and time 03May2010 17:00:00.33
WTO message IFA782A SMF RECORD FLOOD DROP FILTER FOR TYPE 74
EXCEEDED AT TIME=
System ID NMPIPL87

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1608: SMF record flood starts dropping records. WTO
msgid:IFA782A SMF RECORD FLOOD DROP FILTER FOR TYPE 74 EXCEEDED AT TIME=
Alert 1608: SMF record flood starts dropping records. WTO msgid:IFA782A SMF
RECORD FLOOD DROP FILTER FOR TYPE 74 EXCEEDED AT TIME=

Attacks blocked by filter rules are no longer logged – audit trail incomplete (1609)

This alert is generated when logging for packet filtering is no longer enabled.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Attacks blocked by filter rules are no longer logged

Alert: Attacks blocked by filter rules are no longer logged -
audit trail incomplete in TCP/IP stack TCP/IP
Alert id 1609
Changed field IPSEC_LOGENABLE(Yes->No)-
Stack TCP/IP
System ID DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1609: Attacks blocked by filter rules are no longer logged - audit
trail incomplete in TCP/IP stack TCP/IP

Alert 1609: Attacks blocked by filter rules are no longer logged -
audit trail incomplete in TCP/IP stack TCP/IP

The generated email shows that the IP_STACK field IPSEC_LOGENABLE indicates that logging is not enabled for packet filtering. The alert contains the name of the changed field (IPSEC_LOGENABLE), and the old value of the field (Yes), its new value (No), and the security direction (-).

Attacks blocked by default filter rules are no longer logged – audit trail incomplete (1610)

This alert is generated when logging for packets that are denied by the implicit default rules is no longer enabled.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Attacks blocked by default filter rules are no longer logged

Alert: Attacks blocked by default filter rules are no longer logged -
audit trail incomplete in TCP/IP stack TCPIP
Alert id 1610
Changed field IPSEC_LOGIMPLICIT(Yes->No)-
Stack TCPIP
System ID DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1610: Attacks blocked by default filter rules are no longer logged -
audit trail incomplete in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

Alert 1610: Attacks blocked by default filter rules are no longer logged -
audit trail incomplete in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

The generated email shows that the IP_STACK field IPSEC_LOGIMPLICIT indicates that logging is not enabled for packets that are denied by the implicit default rules.

SMF 119 subtype is no longer written - audit trail incomplete (1611)

This alert is generated when SMF 119 records are no longer written when any of the following actions occur:

- A user starts the FTP client command (FTPCLIENT)
- Statistics related to LINK utilization become available (IFSTAT)
- A tunnel is added, removed, activated, or deactivated (IPSECURITY)
- Statistics related to reserved PORT utilization become available (PORTSTAT)
- A TCP connection is established (TCPINIT)
- A TCP/IP stack is activated or terminated (TCPIPSTACK)
- TCP/IP statistics become available (TCPIPSTAT)
- A TCP connection is terminated (TCPTERM)
- The TSO Telnet Client code starts or ends a connection (TN3270CLIENT)
- A UDP socket is closed (UDPTERM)

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: SMF 119 FTPCLIENT is no longer written by stack name

Alert: SMF 119 FTPCLIENT is no longer written -
audit trail incomplete in TCP/IP stack TCPIP
Alert id 1611
Changed field SMF119_FTPCLIENT(Yes->No)-
Stack TCPIP
System ID DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1611: SMF 119 FTPCLIENT is no longer written - audit trail incomplete in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

Alert 1611: SMF 119 FTPCLIENT is no longer written - audit trail incomplete in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

The generated email shows that the IP_STACK flag field corresponding with the associated SMF 119 subtype indicates that records of the given subtype will not be written.

IP filtering support and IPsec tunnel support deactivated (1612)

This alert is generated when IPv4 or IPv6 IP filtering support and IPsec tunnel support are no longer activated.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: IPv4 IP filtering support and IPsec tunnel support deactivated

Alert: IPv4 IP filtering support and IPsec tunnel support deactivated
in TCP/IP stack TCPIP
Alert id 1612
Changed field IPCONFIG_IPSECURITY(Yes->No)-
Stack TCPIP
System ID DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1612: IPv4 IP filtering support and IPsec tunnel support deactivated in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

Alert 1612: IPv4 IP filtering support and IPsec tunnel support deactivated in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

The generated email shows that the IP_STACK field IPCONFIG_IPSECURITY indicates that IPv4 IP filtering and IPsec tunnel support are not activated, or that the IP_STACK field IPCONFIG6_IPSECURITY indicates that IPv6 IP filtering and IPsec tunnel support are not activated.

Ports below 1024 are not reserved anymore (1613)

This alert is generated when TCP or UDP ports 1-1023 are no longer reserved for users by the PORT and PORTRANGE statements.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: UDP ports below 1024 are not reserved anymore by stack name

Alert: UDP ports below 1024 are not reserved anymore in
TCP/IP stack TCPIP
Alert id 1613
Changed field UDP_RESTRICTLOWPORTS(Yes->No)-
Stack TCPIP
System ID DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1613: UDP ports below 1024 are not reserved anymore in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

Alert 1613: UDP ports below 1024 are not reserved anymore in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

The generated email shows that the IP_STACK field TCP_RESTRICTLOWPORTS indicates that TCP ports 1 - 1023 are not reserved for users by the PORT and

PORTRANGE statements, or that the IP_STACK field UDP_RESTRICTLOWPORTS indicates that UDP ports 1 - 1023 are not reserved for users by the PORT and PORTRANGE statements.

Interface security class changed (1614)

This alert is generated when the security class used for IP filtering with this interface changes.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Security class changed for interface interface

Alert: Interface EELINK security class has changed in
TCP/IP stack TCPIP

Alert id	1614
Changed field	SECCLASS(255->238)
Interface	EELINK
Security class	238
Stack	TCPIP
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1614: Interface EELINK security class has changed in TCP/IP
stack TCPIP

Alert 1614: Interface EELINK security class has changed in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

The generated email contains the IPv4 or IPv6 interface name, and the security class used for IP filtering with this interface.

IP filter rules changed (1615)

This alert is generated when an IP filter rule is changed, added, or deleted.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: IP filter rules changed in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

Alert: IP filter rules changed in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

Alert id	1615
Kind of change	CHG-
Changed fields	LOG(Yes->No)-
Source IP	
Source prefix length	0
Source port	0
Destination IP	
Destination prefix length	0
Destination port	0
Protocol	
Type	64
Code	0
Packet filter logging enabled	No
Routing	LOCAL
Security class	0
Stack	TCPIP
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1615: IP filter rules changed in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

Alert:1615: IP filter rules changed in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

The generated email contains several components of the changed, added, or deleted IP filter rule: the source IP address for the outbound rule, the prefix length for the source subnet address, the source port for the outbound rule (for TCP or UDP traffic), the destination IP address for the outbound rule, the destination subnet address prefix length, the destination port for the outbound rule (matching the source port for the generated inbound rule), the type of traffic that the rule applies to, the ICMP value (for ICMP traffic), an indication whether packet filter logging is enabled for the default filter rule, the type of packet routing that the rule applies to, and the security class of the rule.

Group alerts

Connected to an important group (1701)

This alert is generated when a userid is connected to an important group.

To receive this alert, you must have SETROPTS setting SAUDIT, AUDIT(USER), or AUDIT(GROUP) enabled.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: C2RMUS02 issued connect to important group SYS1 for C2RMUS01

Alert: C2RMUS02 issued connect to important group SYS1 for C2RMUS01

User connected to an important group

Alert id	1701
Date and time	09Mar2005 14:49:55.90
User	C2RMUS01
Group	SYS1
Result	Success
Issued by	C2RMUS02
Job name	C2RMUS0
System ID	DINO
Command	CONNECT C2RMUS01 GROUP(SYS1)

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 1701: C2RMUS02 issued connect to important group SYS1 for C2RMUS01

Alert 1701: C2RMUS02 issued connect to important group SYS1 for C2RMUS01

The generated email report shows which userid is connected to which important group.

This alert can be customized for your organization. When you select the alert, you are prompted with a panel. In the panel, you can specify the number of violations you consider being excessive. Furthermore, you can specify up to 10 user IDs or user ID masks to be excluded. See “Major administrative activity (1120 & 2120) configuration” on page 119.

Application alerts

zSecure Access Monitor not active (1801)

An alert is sent when the zSecure Access Monitor is not active and Access Monitor data is not collected.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: zSecure Access Monitor not active

Alert: zSecure Access Monitor not active
System messages report the zSecure Access Monitor is no longer active

Alert id 1801
Date and time 03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
WTO message C2P0100A zSecure Access Monitor not active
System ID DINO

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 1801: zSecure Access Monitor not active

Alert 1801: zSecure Access Monitor not active

The alert shows the WTO message, which indicates that the zSecure Access Monitor is no longer active.

zSecure server connection lost (1802)

An alert is sent when the last TCP connection to a partner zSecure Server was dropped. The connection remains dropped until a new allocation request is received.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: zSecure Server connection lost

Alert: zSecure Server connection lost
System messages report the zSecure Server lost a connection

Alert id 1802
Date and time 03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
WTO message CKN165I 00 zSecure Server PROD1/S1 lost last connection to PROD2/S2
System ID DINO

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 1802: zSecure Server connection lost

Alert 1802: zSecure Server connection lost

The alert includes the WTO message, which identifies the zSecure server that is no longer connected.

Tivoli Workload Scheduler job has not started (1804)

An alert is sent when a Tivoli Scheduler job did not start.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Job JOB39 has not started in application MYAPP39

Alert: Job JOB39 has not started in application MYAPP39
System messages report that a TWS Job has not started

Alert id 1804
Jobname JOB39
Jobnumber JOB00584
Application MYAPP39
Date and time 04May2014 22:47:34.54
WTO message EQQE039I LONG TIME ON INPUT QUEUE FOR JOB JOB39(JOB00
(010), APPL = MYAPP39, WORK STATION = CPUA,
IA=1404010034
System ID TVT8018

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 1804: Job JOB39 has not started in application MYAPP39

Alert 1804: Job JOB39 has not started in application MYAPP39

This alert can be customized for your organization. When you select the alert, you are prompted with a panel. In the panel, you can specify the TWS applications for which this alert must be generated.

Tivoli Workload Scheduler job is late (1805)

An alert is sent when a Tivoli Workload Scheduler job is late.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Job JOB37 is late starting for application MYAPP37

Alert: Job JOB37 is late starting for application MYAPP37
System messages report that a TWS Job is late starting

Alert id	1805
Jobname	JOB37
Jobnumber	1234
Application	MYAPP37
Date and time	14May2014 13:06:01.65
WTO message	EQQE037I JOB RENEJOB1(1234),OPERATION (OPERNUM) IN APPLICATION MYAPP37 IS LATE, WORK STATION = WSID, IA = ARRTIME
System ID	TVT8018

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 1805: Job JOB37 is late starting for application MYAPP37

Alert 1805: Job JOB37 is late starting for application MYAPP37

This alert can be customized for your organization. When you select the alert, you are prompted with a panel. In the panel, you can specify the TWS applications for which this alert must be generated.

Tivoli Workload Scheduler job has failed (1806)

An alert is sent when a Tivoli Workload Scheduler job failed.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Job JOB36 ended in error in application MYAPP36

Alert: Job JOB36 ended in error in application MYAPP36
System messages report that a TWS Job ended in error

Alert id	1806
Jobname	JOB36
Jobnumber	JOB32463
Application	MYAPP39
Date and time	14May2014 13:05:55.62
WTO message	EQQE036I JOB JOB36 (JOB06424), OPERATION(0010), OPERATION TEXT(), ENDED IN ERROR S806. PRTY=5, APPL = MYAPP36 , WORK STATION = CPUA, IA= 1405150001, NO E2E RC
System ID	TVT8018

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 1806: Job JOB36 ended in error application MYAPP36

Alert 1806: Job JOB36 ended in error application MYAPP36

This alert can be customized for your organization. When you select the alert, you are prompted with a panel. In the panel, you can specify the TWS applications for which this alert must be generated.

Predefined ACF2 alerts

The categories of ACF2 alerts that are shipped with zSecure Alert are described here.

User alerts

The following alerts are used to monitor events that pertain to specific users and for auditing changes to users.

Logon with emergency logonid (2102)

An alert is sent if a logonid that is meant for emergencies is used for TSO logon or batch job submission.

To receive this alert, you must log SMF record type 30 subtype 1.

The e-mail format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Emergency user IBMUSER logged on

Alert: Emergency user IBMUSER logged on
Successful logon or job submit with a logonid meant for emergencies

Alert id	2102
Date and time	03Feb2006 09:38:44.94
User	IBMUSER IBM DEFAULT USER
Job name + id	IBMUSER TSU05900
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2102: emergency user IBMUSER logged on

Alert 2102: emergency user IBMUSER logged on

The generated e-mail report shows the logonid used to log on to the system and whether the logon succeeded.

This alert enables you to configure the panel for your site. When selecting the alert, you are prompted with a panel. You can enter up to 10 logonids that must only be used in case of emergencies. See “Emergency user configuration (alerts 1102 and 2102)” on page 117.

Highly authorized user revoked for password (2104)

This alert is triggered when a user with a system-level authority (SECURITY, NON-CNCL, or READALL) is revoked because of excessive invalid password attempts.

This alert can be caused by an intruder trying to guess the password.

Note: You must take care not all your users with system authority get revoked at the same time. You must have some procedure to make sure at least one unrevoked logonid with SECURITY authority is reinstated.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Highly authorized user C##CX44 revoked for password violations

Alert: Highly authorized user C##CX44 revoked for password violations
System-level authorized user revoked due to excessive password attempts

Alert id 2104
Date and time 07Feb2006 14:58:27.13
User C##CX44 TEST USER
System ID DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2104: Highly authorized user C##CX44 revoked for password violations

Alert 2104: Highly authorized user C##CX44 revoked for password violations

The report shows the logonid and accompanying name that is revoked for excessive password violations.

System authority granted (2105)

An alert is generated when a user obtains system-level authority (SECURITY, NON-CNCL, or READALL).

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: System authority granted to C##BMR2

Alert: System authority granted to C##BMR2
System-level authority granted to user

Alert id 2105
Date and time 29May2006 13:25:12.42
Authority SECURITY
Granted to C##BMR2 MARY ROBERTSON
Logonid C##BMR1 MARY ROBERTSON
Job name C##BMR1
System ID DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2105: System authority granted to C##BMR2 by C##BMR1

Alert 2105: System authority SECURITY granted to C##BMR2 by C##BMR1

The report shows the system authority that is granted, the user that is granted the authority, and the user that performed the ACF2 command.

System authority removed (2106)

An alert is sent when a system-level authority (SECURITY, NON-CNCL, or READALL) is removed from a user.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: System authority removed from C##BMR1

Alert: System authority removed from C##BMR2
System-level authority removed from user

Alert id 2106
Date and time 29May2006 13:25:16.15
Authority SECURITY

Removed from C##BMR2 MARY ROBERTSON
Logonid C##BMR1 MARY ROBERTSON
Job name C##BMR1
System ID DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2106: System authority removed from C##BMR2 by C##BMR1

Alert 2106: System authority SECURITY removed from C##BMR2 by C##BMR1

The report shows the authority that is removed, the user whose authority is removed, and the user that performed the ACF2 command.

Invalid password attempts exceed limit (2111)

This alert is sent if too many failed logon attempts are made with an invalid password for one specific logon ID in a specific time window. The measurement interval is the sum of the REPORT options **Interval** and **AverageInterval**. See the information about the REPORT command in the *IBM Security zSecure CARLa-Driven Components: Installation and Deployment Guide*.

Too many is defined as 5 attempts or more. If you want to use another limit, you must copy the alert to an installation defined alert. You must adapt all four instances of

```
#history(nd,<5), #total(nd,>=5),
```

in the new skeleton member to use the limit you want instead of 5.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Invalid password attempts exceed limit for C##BSG2

Alert: Invalid password attempts exceed limit for C##BSG2
Excessive number of password attempts by user

Alert id 2111
Date and time 03Mar2006 13:30:04.39 - 03Mar2003 13:39:23.78
Attempts 6
User C##BSG2 SUSAN GAYNOR
Result Violation
System ID DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2111: Invalid password attempts exceed limit for C##BSG2

Alert 2111: Invalid password attempts exceed limit for C##BSG2.

This alert is also raised for password phrase violations. It takes into account a combined number of violations for passwords and password phrases.

The generated email report shows the interval in which the logon attempts occurred and the number of attempts. It also shows the logon ID that was used for trying to log on to the system and the status of the logon. In this alert, the logons are always violations.

Password history flushed (2112)

This alert is sent if the password for a specific logon ID is changed more often than the password history GSO setting in a specific time window. It means that the user flushed the entire password history, enabling reuse of a previous password. The measurement interval is the sum of the REPORT options **Interval** and

AverageInterval. See the information about the REPORT command in the *IBM Security zSecure CARLa-Driven Components: Installation and Deployment Guide*.

Note: Alert 2112 and 2113 are related. When a report interval ends while a password history is being flushed, alert 2113 is triggered; alert 2112 occurs when flushing completes. If you receive multiple alerts 2113 for the same user without alert 2112, it is likely that the history is flushed or being flushed, but the user might have taken some more time for it.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Password history flushed for C##BSG2

Alert: Password history flushed for C##BSG2
Repeated PASSWORD commands flush password history

Alert id	2112
Date and time	05Mar2006 11:47:11.21 - 03Mar2006 11:47:12.04
Pwd changes	33
User	C##BSG2 SUSAN GAYNOR
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2112: Password history flushed for C##BSG2

Alert 2112: Password history flushed for C##BSG2

The generated email report shows the interval in which the password history flushing occurred, the number of password changes, and the logon ID of the user that flushed the password history of the user.

Suspect password changes (2113)

An alert is sent if the password for a specific logon ID is changed five times or more in a specific time window.

The password change is not so often that the password history has been flushed completely, which would result in alert 2112. If you want to use another limit, you must copy the alert to an installation defined alert. Adapt all four instances of

```
#history(nd,<5) #total(nd,>=5),
```

in the new skeleton member to use the wanted limit instead of five.

For further explanation, see “Password history flushed (2112)” on page 92.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Suspect password changes for C##BSG2

Alert: Suspect password changes for C##BSG2
Excessive number of PASSWORD commands by user

Alert id	2113
Date and time	03Mar2006 15:17:12.32 - 03Mar2006 15:17:13.11
Pwd changes	7
User	C##BSG2 SUSAN GAYNOR
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2113: Suspect password changes for C##BSG2

Alert 2113: Suspect password changes for C##BSG2

The generated email report shows the interval in which the password changes occurred, the number of password changes, and the logon ID that has its password changed many times.

Too many violations (2115)

This alert is generated when more violations than a configured number are recorded for a specific logon ID in the interval as specified with the REPORT option. See the information about the REPORT command in the *IBM Security zSecure CARLa-Driven Components: Installation and Deployment Guide*.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: 15 violations recorded for user C2RMUS01

Alert: 15 violations recorded for user C2RMUS01
Number of violation exceeds the configured 10

Alert id	2115
Date and time	09Mar2006 14:49:55.90 - 09Mar2006 14:54:57.89
Violations	15
User	C2RMUS01
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2115: 15 violations recorded for user C2RMUS01

Alert 2115: 15 violations recorded for user C2RMUS01

This alert allows customization for your site. When selecting the alert you are prompted with a panel where you specify the number of violations you consider excessive. Furthermore, you can specify up to 10 logon IDs (or logon ID masks) to be excluded. See “Number of violations and logonids to exclude (2115) configuration” on page 121.

SECURITY authority used by non-SECURITY logon ID (2116)

An alert is generated when a user without SECURITY accesses a data set with SECURITY authority.

This alert implies that the user without SECURITY authority can access all data sets and has the potential to successfully execute commands that require SECURITY. This condition can be set by APF-authorized software.

Note: You must analyze the SMF records cut for the job up to the time the alert was issued as a first attempt to identify the responsible program.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: non-SECURITY user C##BDV1 accessed data set with SECURITY

Alert: non-SECURITY user C##BDV1 accessed data set with SECURITY
Successful data set access using SECURITY by user without SECURITY

Alert id	2116
Date and time	17Jan2003 03:00:16.89
Data set	D##BEV.GBS001.D##Y.DC107SCK.BV0GBS00
Access	UPDATE

User	C##BDV1 DIONNE VONT
Result	LOGGING
Job name	C##BDV1
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2116: non-SECURITY user C##BDV1 accessed (UPDATE) with SECURITY data set D##BEV.GBS001.D##Y.DC107SCK.BV0GBS00

Alert 2116: non-SECURITY user C##BDV1 accessed (UPDATE) with SECURITY data set D##BEV.GBS001.D##Y.DC107SCK.BV0GBS00

NON-CNCL authority used by non-NON-CNCL logon ID (2117)

An alert is generated when a user without NON-CNCL accesses a data set with NON-CNCL authority.

This alert implies that the user can access all data sets. This condition can be set by APF-authorized software.

Note: You must analyze the SMF records cut for the job up to the time the alert was issued as a first attempt to identify the responsible program.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: non-NON-CNCL user C##BDV1 accessed data set with NON-CNCL

Alert: non-NON-CNCL user C##BDV1 accessed data set with NON-CNCL
Successful data set access using NON-CNCL by user without NON-CNCL

Alert id	2117
Date and time	17Jan2003 03:00:16.89
Data set	D##BEV.GBS001.D##Y.DC107SCK.BV0GBS00
Access	UPDATE
User	C##BDV1 DIONNE VONT
Result	LOGGING
Job name	C##BDV1
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2117: non-NON-CNCL user C##BDV1 accessed (UPDATE) with NON-CNCL data set D##BEV.GBS001.D##Y.DC107SCK.BV0GBS00

Alert 2117: non-NON-CNCL user C##BDV1 accessed (UPDATE) with NON-CNCL data set D##BEV.GBS001.D##Y.DC107SCK.BV0GBS00

READALL authority used by non-READALL logon ID (2118)

An alert is generated when a user without READALL accesses a data set with READALL authority.

This alert implies that the user can read all data sets. This condition can be set by APF-authorized software.

Note: You must analyze the SMF records cut for the job up to the time the alert was issued as a first attempt to identify the responsible program.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: non-READALL user C##BDV1 accessed data set with READALL

Alert: non-READALL user C##BDV1 accessed data set with READALL

Successful data set access using READALL by user without READALL

Alert id	2118
Date and time	17Jan2003 03:00:16.89
Data set	D##BEV.GBS001.D##Y.DC107SCK.BV0GBS00
Access	READ
User	C##BDV1 DIONNE VONT
Result	LOGGING
Job name	C##BDV1
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2118: non-READALL user C##BDV1 accessed (READ) with READALL data set D##BEV.GBS001.D##Y.DC107SCK.BV0GBS00

Alert 2118: non-READALL user C##BDV1 accessed (READ) with READALL data set D##BEV.GBS001.D##Y.DC107SCK.BV0GBS00

Non-expiring password enabled (2119)

An alert is sent when a non-expiring password is enabled for a logon ID by assigning the LIDZMAX attribute. The non-expiring password is effective when MAXDAYS(0) is set for the logon ID.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: User C##ASCH enabled non-expiring password for C##ABRJ

Alert: User C##ASCH enabled non-expiring password for C##ABRJ
Non-expiring password has been enabled by assigning LIDZMAX

Alert id	2119
Date and time	03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
User	C##ABRJ JOHN BROWN
Issued by	C##ASCH SIRAM CHRISTIAN
Job name	C##ASCHL
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 2119: User C##ASCH enabled non-expiring password for C##ABRJ

Alert 2119: User C##ASCH enabled non-expiring password for C##ABRJ

The alert shows the command issuer and the logon ID for which the LIDZMAX attribute was set.

Major administrative activity (2120)

An alert is sent when more ACF2 commands than a configured number are recorded for a specific user in the interval as specified with the zSecure Alert REPORT option **AverageInterval**.

For more information about the zSecure Alert REPORT option **AverageInterval**, see the information about the REPORT command in *IBM Security zSecure CARLa-Driven Components: Installation and Deployment Guide*.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: 126 commands recorded for user CDADMIN

Alert: 126 commands recorded for user CDADMIN
Number of commands exceeds the configured 100

Alert id 2120
Date and time 03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
User CDADMIN BATCH ADMIN JOB
System ID DINO

Time	Event	Event type
10:40	ChgLogonid	REPLACE
10:40	ChgLogonid	REPLACE

.....

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 2120: 126 commands recorded for user CDADMIN

Alert 2120: 126 commands recorded for user CDADMIN

The alert includes the user, the number of commands that are issued, and a list of events.

This alert can be customized for your organization. When you select the alert, you are prompted with a panel. In the panel, you can specify the number of violations you consider being excessive. You can specify up to 10 user IDs or user ID masks to be excluded. See “Major administrative activity (1120 & 2120) configuration” on page 119.

Data set alerts

This section describes the predefined alerts for data set access.

WARNING mode access on data set (2201)

A data set is accessed and access is granted because of warning mode.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: WARNING mode READ on data set CDS.SCDSSAMP

Alert: WARNING mode READ on data set CDS.SCDSSAMP
Data set access granted due to warning mode

Alert id 2201
Date and time 21Jan2006 09:11:11.01
Data set CDS.SCDSSAMP
Granted access READ
Rule CDS.-
User C##BMR1 MARY ROBERTSON
Job name C##BMR1
System ID DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2201: WARNING mode READ by C##BMR1 on data set CDS.SCDSSAMP

Alert 2201: WARNING mode READ by C##BMR1 on data set CDS.SCDSSAMP

The report shows the data set, the user that requested access to it, the rule against which the access is checked, and the access that is granted.

A rule in WARNING mode grants any access to the resource, including what the rule would not allow otherwise. WARNING mode is typically used to analyze what the effects of the access settings of a rule are before the access control is

enforced. It is used as a temporary measure to overcome production problems. If you receive these alerts, you must verify whether the access can be allowed. If so, change the access settings of the rule accordingly. If this access is not supposed to occur, take remedial action as required.

Update on APF data set (2204)

An alert is sent when an APF authorized data set is updated.

You can specify the privileged user and groups for which the alert must not be generated with SE.A.S option **Privileged users and groups for UPDATE on APF data sets**.

Note: You might want to refresh the CKFREEZE data set that contains the environmental data. Use a SETPROG or SET PROG command to update the APF list and then use the MODIFY C2POLICE, COLLECT command.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Update by C##ASCH on APF data set C##A.D.C##NEW.APF.LOAD

Alert: Update by C##ASCH on APF data set C##A.D.C##NEW.APF.LOAD
APF data set successfully updated

Alert id	2204
Date and time	03Feb2003 10:12:05.30
Data set	C##A.D.C##NEW.APF.LOAD
Access	UPDATE
User	C##ASCH
Result	LOGGING
Job name	C##ASCHL
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2204: Update by user C##ASCH on APF data set
C##A.D.C##NEW.APF.LOAD

Alert 2204: Update by user C##ASCH on APF data set C##A.D.C##NEW.APF.LOAD

The alert shows the data set that was updated, the employed access level, and the user who accessed the data set.

Data set added to APF list (2205)

An alert is generated when a data set is dynamically added to the APF list using the SET PROG or SETPROG command.

To generate this alert, WTO message CSV410I must be available and selected for processing.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Data set added to APF list: SYSPROG.APF.LOAD

Alert: Data set added to APF list: SYSPROG.APF.LOAD
A data set is dynamically added to the APF list

Alert id	2205
Date and time	21Feb2003 11:44:36.71

Data set	SYSPROG.APF.LOAD
Volume	<SMS MANAGED>
Console ID	R##SLIN
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2205: Data set added to APF list from console R##SLIN:
SYSPROG.APF.LOAD

Alert 2205: Data set added to APF list from console R##SLIN:
SYSPROG.APF.LOAD on volume <SMS MANAGED>

The alert shows the data set that was added to the APF list, on what volume the data set resides, or, <SMS MANAGED> if it is managed by SMS, and the name of the console from which the user entered the SET PROG or SETPROG command, if entered from SDSF, the console name defaults to the logonid of the user.

Data set removed from APF list (2206)

An alert is generated when a data set is dynamically removed from the APF list using the SET PROG or SETPROG command.

To generate this alert, WTO message CSV410I must be available and selected for processing.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Data set removed from APF list: SYSPROG.APF.LOAD

Alert: Data set removed from APF list: SYSPROG.APF.LOAD
A data set is dynamically removed from the APF list

Alert id	2206
Date and time	21Feb2003 11:44:36.71
Data set	SYSPROG.APF.LOAD
Volume	<SMS MANAGED>
Console ID	R##SLIN
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2206: Data set removed from APF list from console R##SLIN:
SYSPROG.APF.LOAD

Alert 2206: APF Data set removed from APF list from console R##SLIN:
SYSPROG.APF.LOAD on volume <SMS MANAGED>

The alert shows the data set that was removed from the APF list, on what volume the data set resides, or, <SMS MANAGED> if it is managed by SMS, and the name of the console from which the user entered the SET PROG or SETPROG command, if entered from SDSF, the console name defaults to the logon ID of the user.

Data set addition to APF list detected (2207)

This alert is generated when a data set is added to the APF list by any method.

This alert includes use of the SET PROG or SETPROG command and use of other products. To generate this alert, Extended Monitoring must be active. Because this alert is based on a comparison of two system snapshots, no information is available about the user ID, jobname that was used to add the data set, or the process that was used to perform the addition.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Data set addition to APF list detected: SYSPROG.APF.LOAD

Alert: Data set addition to APF list detected: SYSPROG.APF.LOAD
An addition of a data set to the APF list has been detected

Alert id	2207
Data set	SYSPROG.APF.LOAD
Volume	<SMS MANAGED>
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2207: Data set addition to APF list detected: SYSPROG.APF.LOAD
Alert 2207: Data set addition to APF list detected: SYSPROG.APF.LOAD
on volume <SMS MANAGED>

The alert shows the data set that was added to the APF list and the volume where the data set resides. If the data set is managed by SMS, the volume field shows <SMS MANAGED>. Because this alert is based on a comparison of two system snapshots, it does not provide any information about the user ID, jobname that was used to add the data set, or the process that was used to perform the addition.

Data set removal from APF list detected (2208)

This alert is generated when a data set is removed from the APF list by any method.

This alert includes use of the SET PROG or SETPROG command and use of other products. To generate this alert, Extended Monitoring must be active. Because this alert is based on a comparison of two system snapshots, it does not provide any information about the userid, jobname that was used to remove the data set, or the process that was used to perform the addition.

The e-mail format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Data set removal from APF list detected: SYSPROG.APF.LOAD

Alert: Data set removal from APF list detected: SYSPROG.APF.LOAD
A removal of a data set from the APF list has been detected.

Alert id	2208
Data set	SYSPROG.APF.LOAD
Volume	<SMS MANAGED>
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2208: Data set removal from APF list detected: SYSPROG.APF.LOAD
Alert 2208: Data set removal from APF list detected: SYSPROG.APF.LOAD
on volume <SMS MANAGED>

The alert shows the data set that was removed from the APF list and on what volume the data set resides (or <SMS MANAGED> if it is managed by SMS). Because this alert is based on a comparison of two system snapshots, it does not provide any information about the userid, jobname that was used to remove the data set, or the process that was used to perform the removal.

Non-regular access to PCI PAN data (2209)

An alert is sent for a successful non-regular INPUT or higher access to a PCI PAN (credit card Primary Account Number) data set.

You can specify the PCI PAN data sets and the privileged user and groups for which the alert should not be generated with option SE.A.P.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert 2209: INPUT access by C##ASCH on PCI-PAN data set C##A.D.C##NEW.PAN

Alert 2209: INPUT access by C##ASCH on PCI-PAN data set C##A.D.C##NEW.PAN
Non-regular acces

Alert id	2209
Date and time	03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
Data set	C##A.D.C##NEW.APF.LOAD
Sensitivity	PCI-PAN
Access	INPUT
User	C##ASCH SIRAM CHRISTIAN
Result	LOGGING
Job name	C##ASCHL
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2209: INPUT access by C##ASCH on PCI-PAN data set C##A.D.C##NEW.PAN

Alert 2209: INPUT access by C##ASCH on PCI-PAN data set C##A.D.C##NEW.PAN

The alert shows the data set that was accessed, the access level used (for example INPUT) and the user who accessed the data set.

Non-regular access to clear text PCI PAN data (2210)

An alert is sent for a successful non-regular INPUT or higher access to clear text PCI PAN (credit card Primary Account Number) data.

You can specify the clear PCI PAN data sets and the privileged user and groups for which the alert should not be generated with option SE.A.P.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert 2210: INPUT access by C##ASCH on PCI-PAN-clr data set C##A.D.C##NEW.PAN

Alert 2210: INPUT access by C##ASCH on PCI-PAN-clr data set C##A.D.C##NEW.PAN
Non-regular access

Alert id	2210
Date and time	03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
Data set	C##A.D.C##NEW.APF.LOAD
Sensitivity	PCI-PAN-clr
Access	INPUT
User	C##ASCH SIRAM CHRISTIAN
Result	LOGGING
Job name	C##ASCHL
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2210: INPUT access by C##ASCH on PCI-PAN-clr data set
C##A.D.C##NEW.PAN

Alert 2210: INPUT access by C##ASCH on PCI-PAN-clr data set C##A.D.C##NEW.PAN

The alert shows the data set that was accessed, the access level used (for example INPUT) and the user who accessed the data set.

Non-regular access to PCI AUTH data (2211)

An alert is sent for a successful non-regular INPUT or higher access to a PCI AUTH (credit card sensitive authentication data) data set.

You can specify the PCI AUTH data sets and the privileged user and groups for which the alert should not be generated with option SE.A.P.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert 2211: INPUT access by C##ASCH on PCI-AUTH data set
C##A.D.C##NEW.PAN

Alert 2210: INPUT access by C##ASCH on PCI-AUTH data set C##A.D.C##NEW.PAN
Non-regular access

Alert id	2211
Date and time	03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
Data set	C##A.D.C##NEW.APF.LOAD
Sensitivity	PCI-AUTH
Access	INPUT
User	C##ASCH SIRAM CHRISTIAN
Result	LOGGING
Job name	C##ASCHL
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2211: INPUT access by C##ASCH on PCI-AUTH data set
C##A.D.C##NEW.PAN

Alert 2211: INPUT access by C##ASCH on PCI-AUTH data set C##A.D.C##NEW.PAN

The alert shows the data set that was accessed, the access level used (for example INPUT) and the user who accessed the data set.

Access>=READ on site sensitive data set (2212)

An alert is sent for a successful non-regular READ or higher access to a site sensitive data set. For ACF2, this translates to access INPUT, READBACK, OUTPUT, UPDATE, INOUT, OUTIN, or OUTINX.

You can specify the sensitive data sets and the privileged user and groups for which the alert must not be generated with option SE.A.S. The alert is not generated for resources that already have a sensitivity assigned by zSecure; for example, APF libraries, JES spool data sets, etc.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert 2212: INPUT access by C##ASCH on site sensitive READ data set
C##A.D.C##NEW.MACLIB

Alert 2212: INPUT access by C##ASCH on site sensitive READ data set
C##A.D.C##NEW.MACLIB
Non-regular access

Alert id 2212
Date and time 03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
Data set C##A.D.C##NEW.MACLIB
Sensitivity Site-Dsn-R
Access INPUT
User C##ASCH SIRAM CHRISTIAN
Result Success
Job name C##ASCHL
System ID DINO

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 2212: INPUT access by C##ASCH on site sensitive READ data set
C##A.D.C##NEW.MACLIB

Alert 2212: INPUT access by C##ASCH on site sensitive READ data set
C##A.D.C##NEW.MACLIB

The alert shows the data set that was accessed, the access level used (for example INPUT) and the user who accessed the data set.

Access>=UPDATE on site sensitive data set (2213)

An alert is sent for a successful non-regular UPDATE or higher access to a site sensitive data set. For ACF2, this translates to access OUTPUT, UPDATE, INOUT, OUTIN, or OUTINX.

You can specify the sensitive data sets and the privileged user and groups for which the alert must not be generated with option SE.A.S. The alert is not generated for resources that already have a sensitivity assigned by zSecure; for example, APF libraries, JES spool data sets, etc.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert 2213: OUTPUT access by C##ASCH on site sensitive UPDATE data set
C##A.D.C##NEW.MACLIB

Alert 2213: OUTPUT access by C##ASCH on site sensitive UPDATE data set
C##A.D.C##NEW.MACLIB
Non-regular access

Alert id 2213
Date and time 03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
Data set C##A.D.C##NEW.MACLIB
Sensitivity Site-Dsn-U
Access OUTPUT
User C##ASCH SIRAM CHRISTIAN
Result Success
Job name C##ASCHL
System ID DINO

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 2213: OUTPUT access by C##ASCH on site sensitive UPDATE data set
C##A.D.C##NEW.MACLIB

Alert 2213: OUTPUT access by C##ASCH on site sensitive UPDATE data set
C##A.D.C##NEW.MACLIB

The alert shows the data set that was accessed, the access level used (for example OUTPUT), and the user who accessed the data set.

Action on UPDATE sensitive member (2214)

An alert is sent for a successful UPDATE or higher access to a sensitive member. This means one of the following actions is performed on a member: INITIALIZE, DELETE, ADD, REPLACE, or RENAME.

You can specify the members and the data sets they are in with SE.A.S. option **UPDATE sensitive members in specific data sets**. You can specify the privileged user and groups for which the alert must not be generated with SE.A.S option **Privileged users and groups for site UPDATE sensitive resources**.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert 2214: Action by C##ASCH on UPDATE sensitive member IEASYS81

Alert 2214: Action by C##ASCH on UPDATE sensitive member IEASYS81
Action on UPDATE sensitive member

Alert id	2214
Date and time	03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
Data set	USER.PARMLIB
Action	REPLACE
Member	IEASYS81
Alias	
Old Member	
User	C##ASCH SIRAM CHRISTIAN
Job name	C##ASCHL
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 2214: REPLACE action by C##ASCH on UPDATE sensitive member IEASYS81

Alert 2214: REPLACE action by C##ASCH on UPDATE sensitive member IEASYS81 in data set USER.PARMLIB

The alert shows the data set and member that was updated and the action that is performed on the member.

General resource alerts

These alerts report on the use of general resources.

Default STC logon ID used for STC (2301)

An alert is sent if a started task uses the default STC logon ID.

To generate this alert, WTO message ACF9CCCD must be available and selected for processing.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: STC default LID ACFSTCID used for STC IEFBR14A

Alert: STC default LID ACFSTCID used for STC IEFBR14A
A started task uses the STC default logonid

Alert id	2301
Date and time	11Feb2003 18:14:48.78
Logonid	ACFSTCID
Started task	IEFBR14A
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2301: STC default LID ACFSTCID used for STC IEFBR14A

Alert 2301: STC default LID ACFSTCID used for STC IEFBR14A

The report shows the ACF2 default logon ID used and the started task member name. This report does not show the user who began the started task.

You can remove the cause of this alert if you define a GSO STC record for this started task. The default logon ID is not checked anymore for this started task.

UNIX alerts

The following alerts are triggered when a UNIX superuser privilege is obtained.

Superuser privileged shell obtained by user (2407)

An alert is generated when a user used the UNIX su command to obtain a shell with superuser privileges.

To receive this alert, you must have successful READ logging specified on the BPX.SUPERUSER FACILITY rule entry.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO

Subject: Alert: Superuser privileged shell obtained by user C##BSG1

Alert: Superuser privileged shell obtained by user C##BSG1

A user used su to obtain a shell with superuser privileges

Alert id	2407
Date and time	14May2003 14:15:21.98
User	C##BSG1 SUSAN GAYNOR
Job name	C##BSG1
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2407: Superuser privileged shell obtained by user C##BSG1

Alert 2407: Superuser privileged shell obtained by user C##BSG1

The report shows the user who used **su** to obtain a shell with superuser privileges. This user is able to read and write any file or directory on the UNIX subsystem.

Extended attribute changed (2409)

If this alert is activated, a notification message is generated when a change is detected in the extended attributes settings (APF, program control, or _BPX_SHAREAS) for a UNIX file or program. To receive this alert, the level of the z/OS system must be at least 1.11.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO

Subject: Alert Extended attribute changed for <Unix-filename>

Alert Extended attribute changed for <Unix-filename>

Alert id	2409
Previous value	<old value>
New value	<new value>
Date and time	Date(9) Time(11)

Path	Unix pathname
User	User(8)Name
Job name	JobName
System id	System

In the email notification, *old value* and *new value* can contain a combination of the following values: Shared library, APF-authorized, and Program controlled.

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2409: Extended attribute changed (APS-> APS) by <userid> for <unix file name>.

Alert 2409: Extended attribute changed (APS-> APS) by <userid> for <unix file name>

The extended attributes of a UNIX file *unix file name* changed. The old and new extended attributes are shown between the parentheses. The string APS stands for the extended attributes: APF Authorized, Program controlled, and Shared Library. The command was issued by *userid*.

ACF2 control alerts

These alerts report on ACF2 GSO setting changes.

Global security countermeasure added (2501)

An alert is sent when an ACF2 GSO setting is added.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Global security countermeasure added by C##BNA2

Alert: Global security countermeasure added by C##BNA2
ACF2 command used to add GSO setting

Alert id	2501
Date and time	23Jan2003 12:13:34.58
Rule key	C-GSO-CRM PSWD
Field/value	WRNDAYS/5
User	C##BNA2 NICK AFTERSOCK
Job name	C##BNA2
System id	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2501: Global security countermeasure added by C##BNA2

Alert 2501: Global security countermeasure added by C##BNA2: C-GSO-CRM PSWD

The alert shows the GSO rule key, the GSO field and its value, and the user that executed the command.

For SNMP, only one GSO rule key, GSO field, and value is sent with variable whatParm.

Global security countermeasure deleted (2502)

An alert is sent when an ACF2 GSO setting is deleted.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Global security countermeasure deleted by C##BNA2

Alert: Global security countermeasure deleted by C##BNA2
ACF2 command used to delete GSO setting

Alert id	2502
Date and time	23Jan2003 12:13:34.58

Rule key	C-GSO-CRM	PSWD
Field/value	WRNDAYS/5	
User	C##BNA2	NICK AFTERSOCK
Job name	C##BNA2	
System id	DINO	

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2502: Global security countermeasure deleted by C##BNA2

Alert 2502: Global security countermeasure deleted by C##BNA2: C-GSO-CRM PSWD

The alert shows the GSO rule key, the GSO field and its value, and the user that executed the command.

For SNMP, only one GSO rule key, GSO field, and value is sent with variable whatParm.

Global security countermeasure changed (2503)

An alert is sent when an ACF2 GSO setting is changed.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO

Subject: Alert: Global security countermeasure changed by C##BNA2

Alert: Global security countermeasure changed by C##BNA2

ACF2 command used to change GSO setting

Alert id	2503
Date and time	23Jan2003 12:13:34.58
Rule key	C-GSO-CRM PSWD
Field/Old/New	WRNDAYS/5/10
User	C##BNA2 NICK AFTERSOCK
Job name	C##BNA2
System id	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2503: Global security countermeasure changed by C##BNA2

Alert 2503: Global security countermeasure changed by C##BNA2: C-GSO-CRM PSWD

The alert shows the GSO rule key, the GSO field and its old and new values, and the user that executed the command.

For SNMP, only one GSO rule key, GSO field, and value is sent with variable whatParm.

System alerts

The following alerts are for monitoring general system events.

SMF data loss started (2601)

This alert is generated when WTO reports that SMF data loss has started.

This alert is reported in messages IEE351I, IEE979W, and IEE989I.

Note: You can choose to activate alert 2602 so that you are notified when the immediate exposure passes.

To receive this alert, you must receive WTO messages IEE351I, IEE979W, and IEE989I.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: SMF data loss started

Alert: SMF data loss started
System messages report that SMF data loss has started

Alert id	2601
Date and time	10Feb2003 16:36:27.07
WTO message	IEE979W SMF DATA LOST - NO BUFFER SPACE
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2601: SMF data loss started. WTO msgid: IEE979W

Alert 2601: SMF data loss started. WTO msgid: IEE979W

The generated email contains only the issued WTO message.

SMF logging resumed after failure (2602)

This alert is generated when SMF data was lost due to full buffers, but the system has resumed logging.

Note: You can choose to activate this alert so that you are notified when the immediate exposure indicated by alert 2601 passes.

To receive this alert, you must log SMF record type 7.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: SMF logging resumed after failure

Alert: SMF logging resumed after failure
SMF data is lost, but the system has resumed logging

Alert id	2602
Start of loss	10Feb2003 17:35:58.97
Date and time	10Feb2003 17:36:27.12
#records lost	4121
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2602: SMF logging resumed after failure. 4121 records lost.

Alert 2602: SMF logging resumed after failure. 4121 records lost.

The generated email contains the start time (Start of loss) and end time (Resume time) of the period when data was lost. It also shows the number of SMF records that were lost.

SVC definition changed (2603)

This alert is generated when a change is detected in the definition of an SVC in the SVC-table or the SVC ESR-table.

This alert shows the SVC and ESR number of the SVC that was changed. The current address of the SVC code is shown together with the current APF status. Because this alert is generated based on a comparison of two system snapshots, no information is available about how the change was accomplished.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at IDFX
Subject: Alert: SVC Definition changed: SVC/ESR 220/

Alert: SVC Definition changed: SVC/ESR 220/
A change in the definition of an SVC has been detected

Alert id	2603
SVC/ESR number	220/
Address	00147080
APF	Yes
System ID	IDFX

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2603: SVC Definition changed: SVC/ESR 220/
Alert 2603: SVC Definition changed: SVC/ESR 220/ at address 00147080 APF

IBM Health Checker found low severity problem (2604)

This alert is generated when WTO reports that IBM Health Checker found a low severity problem.

This alert is reported in message HZS0001I.

To receive this alert, you must receive WTO message HZS0001I.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: IBM Health Checker found low severity problem

Alert: IBM Health Checker found low severity problem
Check found a problem that should be investigated

Alert id	2604
Date and time	10Feb2010 16:36:27.07
System ID	DINO
WTO message	HZS0001I CHECK(IBMGRS,GRS_SYNCHRES):

ISGH0305E Global Resource Serialization synchronous
RESERVE processing
is not active.

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2604: IBM Health Checker low severity: HZS0001I CHECK(IBMGRS,GRS_SYNCHRES):
Alert 2604: IBM Health Checker low severity: HZS0001I CHECK(IBMGRS,GRS_SYNCHRES):

IBM Health Checker found medium severity problem (2605)

This alert is generated when WTO reports that IBM Health Checker found a medium severity problem.

This alert is reported in message HZS0002E.

To receive this alert, you must receive WTO message HZS0002E,

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: IBM Health Checker found medium severity problem

Alert: IBM Health Checker found medium severity problem
Check found a problem that should be investigated

Alert id 2605
Date and time 10Feb2010 16:36:27.07
System ID DINO
WTO message HZS0002E CHECK(IBMASM,ASM_LOCAL_SLOT_USAGE):

ILRH0107E Page data set slot usage threshold met or exceeded

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2605: IBM Health Checker medium severity: HZS0002E
CHECK(IBMASM,ASM_LOCAL_SLOT_USAGE):
Alert 2605: IBM Health Checker medium severity: HZS0002E
CHECK(IBMASM,ASM_LOCAL_SLOT_USAGE):

IBM Health Checker found high severity problem (2606)

This alert is generated when WTO reports that IBM Health Checker found a high severity problem.

This alert is reported in message HZS0003E.

To receive this alert, you must receive WTO message HZS0003E,

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: IBM Health Checker found high severity problem

Alert: IBM Health Checker found high severity problem
Check found a problem that should be investigated

Alert id 2606
Date and time 10Feb2010 16:36:27.07
System ID DINO
WTO message HZS0003E CHECK(IBMxcf,XCF_CDS_SPOF):

IXCH0242E One or more couple data sets have a single point of failure.

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2606: IBM Health Checker high severity: HZS0003E CHECK(IBMxcf,XCF_CDS_SPOF):
Alert 2606: IBM Health Checker high severity: HZS0003E CHECK(IBMxcf,XCF_CDS_SPOF):

SMF record flood detected (2607)

This alert is generated when WTO reports that SMF record flood is detected.

This alert is reported in message IFA780A.

To receive this alert, you must receive WTO message IFA780A.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: SMF record flood detected

Alert: SMF record flood detected
System messages report SMF record flood detected

Alert id 2607
Date and time 03May2010 17:50:05.46
WTO message IFA780A SMF RECORD FLOOD MSG FILTER FOR TYPE 40
EXCEEDED AT TIME=
System ID NMPIPL87

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2607: SMF record flood detected. WTO msgid:IFA780A SMF RECORD FLOOD MSG FILTER FOR TYPE 40 EXCEEDED AT TIME=
Alert 2607: SMF record flood detected. WTO msgid:IFA780A SMF RECORD FLOOD MSG FILTER FOR TYPE 40 EXCEEDED AT TIME=

SMF record flood starts dropping records (2608)

This alert is generated when WTO reports that SMF record flood starts dropping records.

This alert is reported in message IFA782A.

To receive this alert, you must receive WTO message IFA782A.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: SMF record flood starts dropping records

Alert: SMF record flood starts dropping records
System messages report SMF record flood starts dropping records
Alert id 2608
Date and time 03May2010 17:00:00.33
WTO message IFA782A SMF RECORD FLOOD DROP FILTER FOR TYPE 74
EXCEEDED AT TIME=
System ID NMPIPL87

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2608: SMF record flood starts dropping records. WTO msgid:IFA782A SMF RECORD FLOOD DROP FILTER FOR TYPE 74 EXCEEDED AT TIME=
Alert 2608: SMF record flood starts dropping records. WTO msgid:IFA782A SMF RECORD FLOOD DROP FILTER FOR TYPE 74 EXCEEDED AT TIME=

Attacks blocked by filter rules are no longer logged – audit trail incomplete (2609)

This alert is generated when logging for packet filtering is no longer enabled

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Attacks blocked by filter rules are no longer logged

Alert: Attacks blocked by filter rules are no longer logged -
audit trail incomplete in TCP/IP stack TCP/IP
Alert id 2609
Changed field IPSEC_LOGENABLE(Yes->No)-
Stack TCP/IP
System ID DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2609: Attacks blocked by filter rules are no longer logged - audit trail incomplete in TCP/IP stack TCP/IP

Alert 2609: Attacks blocked by filter rules are no longer logged -
audit trail incomplete in TCP/IP stack TCP/IP

The generated email shows that the IP_STACK field IPSEC_LOGENABLE indicates that logging is not enabled for packet filtering. The alert contains the name of the

changed field (IPSEC_LOGENABLE), as well as the old value of the field (Yes), its new value (No), and the security direction (-).

Attacks blocked by default filter rules are no longer logged – audit trail incomplete (2610)

This alert is generated when logging for packets that are denied by the implicit default rules is no longer enabled.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Attacks blocked by default filter rules are no longer logged

Alert: Attacks blocked by default filter rules are no longer logged -
audit trail incomplete in TCP/IP stack TCPIP
Alert id 2610
Changed field IPSEC_LOGIMPLICIT(Yes->No)-
Stack TCPIP
System ID DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2610: Attacks blocked by default filter rules are no longer logged -
audit trail incomplete in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

Alert 2610: Attacks blocked by default filter rules are no longer logged -
audit trail incomplete in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

The generated email shows that the IP_STACK field IPSEC_LOGIMPLICIT indicates that logging is not enabled for packets that are denied by the implicit default rules.

SMF 119 subtype is no longer written - audit trail incomplete (2611)

This alert is generated when SMF 119 records are no longer written when any of the following actions occur:

- A user invokes the FTP client command (FTPCLIENT)
- Statistics related to LINK utilization become available (IFSTAT)
- A tunnel is added, removed, activated, or deactivated (IPSECURITY)
- Statistics related to reserved PORT utilization become available (PORTSTAT)
- A TCP connection is established (TCPINIT)
- A TCP/IP stack is activated or terminated (TCPIPSTACK)
- TCP/IP statistics become available (TCPIPSTAT)
- A TCP connection is terminated (TCPTERM)
- The TSO Telnet Client code starts or ends a connection (TN3270CLIENT)
- A UDP socket is closed (UDPTERM)

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: SMF 119 FTPCLIENT is no longer written by stack name

Alert: SMF 119 FTPCLIENT is no longer written -
audit trail incomplete in TCP/IP stack TCPIP
Alert id 2611
Changed field SMF119_FTPCLIENT(Yes->No)-
Stack TCPIP
System ID DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2611: SMF 119 FTPCLIENT is no longer written - audit trail incomplete in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

Alert 2611: SMF 119 FTPCLIENT is no longer written - audit trail incomplete in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

The generated e-mail shows that the IP_STACK flag field corresponding with the associated SMF 119 subtype indicates that records of the given subtype will not be written.

IP filtering support and IPsec tunnel support deactivated (2612)

This alert is generated when IPv4 or IPv6 IP filtering support and IPsec tunnel support are no longer activated.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: IPv4 IP filtering support and IPsec tunnel support deactivated

Alert: IPv4 IP filtering support and IPsec tunnel support deactivated
in TCP/IP stack TCPIP
Alert id 2612
Changed field IPCONFIG_IPSECURITY(Yes->No)-
Stack TCPIP
System ID DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2612: IPv4 IP filtering support and IPsec tunnel support deactivated in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

Alert 2612: IPv4 IP filtering support and IPsec tunnel support deactivated in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

The generated email shows that the IP_STACK field IPCONFIG_IPSECURITY indicates that IPv4 IP filtering and IPsec tunnel support are not activated, or that the IP_STACK field IPCONFIG6_IPSECURITY indicates that IPv6 IP filtering and IPsec tunnel support are not activated.

Ports below 1024 are not reserved anymore (2613)

This alert is generated when TCP or UDP ports 1 - 1023 are no longer reserved for users by the PORT and PORTRANGE statements.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: UDP ports below 1024 are not reserved anymore by stack name

Alert: UDP ports below 1024 are not reserved anymore in
TCP/IP stack TCPIP
Alert id 2613
Changed field UDP_RESTRICTLOWPORTS(Yes->No)-
Stack TCPIP
System ID DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2613: UDP ports below 1024 are not reserved anymore in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

Alert 2613: UDP ports below 1024 are not reserved anymore in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

The generated email shows that the IP_STACK field TCP_RESTRICTLOWPORTS indicates that TCP ports 1 - 1023 are not reserved for users by the PORT and PORTRANGE statements, or that the IP_STACK field UDP_RESTRICTLOWPORTS indicates that UDP ports 1 - 1023 are not reserved for users by the PORT and PORTRANGE statements.

Interface security class changed (2614)

This alert is generated when the security class used for IP filtering with this interface changes.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Security class changed for interface interface

Alert: Interface EELINK security class has changed in
TCP/IP stack TCPIP

Alert id	2614
Changed field	SECCLASS(255->238)
Interface	EELINK
Security class	238
Stack	TCPIP
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2614: Interface EELINK security class has changed in TCP/IP
stack TCPIP

Alert 2614: Interface EELINK security class has changed in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

The generated email contains the IPv4 or IPv6 interface name, and the security class used for IP filtering with this interface.

IP filter rules changed (2615)

This alert is generated when an IP filter rule is changed, added, or deleted.

The email format of the alert is:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: IP filter rules changed in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

Alert: IP filter rules changed in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

Alert id	2615
Kind of change	CHG-
Changed fields	LOG(Yes->No)-
Source IP	
Source prefix length	0
Source port	0
Destination IP	
Destination prefix length	0
Destination port	0
Protocol	
Type	64
Code	0
Packet filter logging enabled	No
Routing	LOCAL
Security class	0
Stack	TCPIP
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is:

Subject: Alert 2615: IP filter rules changed in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

Alert:2615: IP filter rules changed in TCP/IP stack TCPIP

The generated email contains several components of the changed, added, or deleted IP filter rule: the source IP address for the outbound rule, the prefix length for the source subnet address, the source port for the outbound rule (for TCP or UDP traffic), the destination IP address for the outbound rule, the destination subnet address prefix length, the destination port for the outbound rule (matching the source port for the generated inbound rule), the type of traffic that the rule applies to, the ICMP value (for ICMP traffic), an indication whether packet filter logging is enabled for the default filter rule, the type of packet routing that the rule applies to, and the security class of the rule.

Application alerts

zSecure server connection lost (2802)

An alert is sent when the last TCP connection to a partner zSecure Server was dropped. The connection remains dropped until a new allocation request is received.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: zSecure Server connection lost

Alert: zSecure Server connection lost
System messages report the zSecure Server lost a connection

Alert id	2802
Date and time	03Feb2013 10:12:05.30
WTO message	CKN165I 00 zSecure Server PROD1/S1 lost last connection to PROD2/S2
System ID	DINO

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 2802: zSecure Server connection lost

Alert 2802: zSecure Server connection lost

The alert includes the WTO message, which identifies the zSecure server that is no longer connected.

Tivoli Workload Scheduler job has not started (2804)

An alert is sent when a Tivoli Scheduler job did not start.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Job JOB39 has not started in application MYAPP39

Alert: Job JOB39 has not started in application MYAPP39
System messages report that a TWS Job has not started

Alert id	2804
Jobname	JOB39
Jobnumber	JOB00584
Application	MYAPP39
Date and time	04May2014 22:47:34.54
WTO message	EQQE039I LONG TIME ON INPUT QUEUE FOR JOB JOB39(JOB00 (010), APPL = MYAPP39, WORK STATION = CPUA, IA=1404010034
System ID	TVT8018

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 2804: Job JOB39 has not started in application MYAPP39

Alert 2804: Job JOB39 has not started in application MYAPP39

This alert can be customized for your organization. When you select the alert, you are prompted with a panel. In the panel, you can specify the TWS applications for which this alert must be generated.

Tivoli Workload Scheduler job is late (2805)

An alert is sent when a Tivoli Workload Scheduler job is late.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Job JOB37 is late starting for application MYAPP37

Alert: Job JOB37 is late starting for application MYAPP37
System messages report that a TWS Job is late starting

Alert id	2805
Jobname	JOB37
Jobnumber	1234
Application	MYAPP37
Date and time	14May2014 13:06:01.65
WTO message	EQQE037I JOB RENEJOB1(1234),OPERATION (OPERNUM) IN APPLICATION MYAPP37 IS LATE, WORK STATION = WSID, IA = ARRTIME
System ID	TVT8018

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 2805: Job JOB37 is late starting for application MYAPP37

Alert 2805: Job JOB37 is late starting for application MYAPP37

This alert can be customized for your organization. When you select the alert, you are prompted with a panel. In the panel, you can specify the TWS applications for which this alert must be generated.

Tivoli Workload Scheduler job has failed (2806)

An alert is sent when a Tivoli Workload Scheduler job failed.

The email format of the alert is as follows:

From: C2POLICE at DINO
Subject: Alert: Job JOB36 ended in error in application MYAPP36

Alert: Job JOB36 ended in error in application MYAPP36
System messages report that a TWS Job ended in error

Alert id	2806
Jobname	JOB36
Jobnumber	JOB32463
Application	MYAPP39
Date and time	14May2014 13:05:55.62
WTO message	EQQE036I JOB JOB36 (JOB06424), OPERATION(0010), OPERATION TEXT(), ENDED IN ERROR S806. PRTY=5, APPL = MYAPP36 , WORK STATION = CPUA, IA= 1405150001, NO E2E RC
System ID	TVT8018

The text message format of the alert is as follows:

Subject: Alert 2806: Job JOB36 ended in error application MYAPP36

Alert 2806: Job JOB36 ended in error application MYAPP36

This alert can be customized for your organization. When you select the alert, you are prompted with a panel. In the panel, you can specify the TWS applications for which this alert must be generated.

Predefined alert configuration

This section explains how some of the predefined alerts can be configured with installation-specific names.

Alert definition - specify action

When you select **Specify action** on the alert definition panel, the following panel is displayed:

MenuOptionsInfoCommandsSetup

zSecure Suite - Setup - Alert

Command ==>

Specify action

- TSO-RACF command
 - Write TSO-RACF command to C2RCMD DD

Specify command (Press Help key in this field for help)

Enter up to 5 EXCLUDE condition sets (use EGN masks)

X

X

X

X

X

Figure 20. Setup Alert panel: Specify action

The following fields are displayed:

TSO-RACF command

Select this field to generate a TSO-RACF command for this alert.

Write TSO-RACF command to C2RCMD DD

When both this field and **TSO-RACF command** are tagged, the generated commands are not issued, but written to the C2RCMD DD.

Specify command

Enter the command you want to issue for this alert. Enclose the fixed command string parts in single quotation marks ('). For example:
'ALU' USER(0) 'REVOKE'

Enter up to 5 EXCLUDE condition sets (use EGN masks)/(use ACF2 masks). In these fields, you can enter up to 5 exclude condition sets for which no commands should be generated. For example:
USER=(IBMUSER,SYS*)

Emergency user configuration (alerts 1102 and 2102)

The alert 1102 or 2102 means logon with emergency user. When it is selected, the following panel is displayed. You can enter up to 10 emergency users.

Menu	Options	Info	Commands	Setup

zSecure - Setup - Alert				
Command ==> _____				
Enter emergency users				
User 1	.	.	.	IBMUSER
User 2	.	.	.	_____
User 3	.	.	.	_____
User 4	.	.	.	_____
User 5	.	.	.	_____
User 6	.	.	.	_____
User 7	.	.	.	_____
User 8	.	.	.	_____
User 9	.	.	.	_____
User 10	.	.	.	_____

Figure 21. Setup Alert panel: Configuring emergency users (alerts 1102 and 2102) panel

Note: zSecure Alert expects at least one emergency user to be entered. If no input is provided, IBMUSER is used as default.

Revocation for excessive violations (1115) configuration

Alert 1115 means too many violations in addition to just sending the alert. This alert enables you to revoke the offending user.

To be able to take the requested corrective action, the user running the started task needs sufficient authorization for the following tasks:

- RACF revoke, RACF system-wide special, or group special, and so on. See RACF documentation.
- CKGRACF DISABLE command authorization. The users to be managed must fall in the CKGRACF scope of the started task user. See *IBM Security zSecure Admin and Audit for RACF: User Reference Manual*.

The following panel displays when you select this alert:

Menu	Options	Info	Commands	Setup

zSecure - Setup - Alert				
Command ==> _____				
Configure alert 1115: Too many violations				
Number of violations 10				
<input type="checkbox"/> Issue RACF ALTUSER REVOKE command <input type="checkbox"/> Disable user with CKGRACF revoke schedule _____				
Exclude the following users from revocation				
User 1	.	.	.	_____
User 2	.	.	.	_____
User 3	.	.	.	_____
User 4	.	.	.	_____
User 5	.	.	.	_____
User 6	.	.	.	_____
User 7	.	.	.	_____
User 8	.	.	.	_____
User 9	.	.	.	_____
User 10	.	.	.	_____

Figure 22. Setup Alert panel: Configuring revocation for excessive violations (Alert 1115)

The following fields are displayed:

Number of violations

The minimum number of violations allowed in the history interval as specified on the Alert Configuration general settings panel by the field Average.

When the number of violations specified is exceeded, the started task might issue either a RACF or CKGRACF command to revoke the violating user.

Valid values are numbers in the range 1 - 999. When not specified, a default value of 10 is used.

Issue RACF ALTUSER REVOKE command

When this field is selected, a RACF ALTUSER REVOKE command is issued when the number of violations specified is exceeded.

Disable user with CKGRACF revoke schedule

If this field is selected, a CKGRACF USER DISABLE command is issued when the number of violations specified is exceeded.

This field is only available when a zSecure Admin license has been found. When this option is selected, you are required to specify the name of the revoke schedule as well.

This option is mutually exclusive with Issue RACF ALTUSER REVOKE command

User 1-10

These fields enable you to specify user IDs which must be excluded from revocation.

It is possible to use a filter to select more than one user ID. Filters can contain %, that is, any one character, and can end in *, that is, zero or more characters.

Major administrative activity (1120 & 2120) configuration

Alert 1120 or 2120 can be issued for Major administrative activity.

When either alert 1120 or 2120 is selected, the following panel is displayed. You can enter the number of commands you consider being excessive and up to 10 users for which the alert must not be generated.

The following panel displays when you select this alert:

Menu	Options	Info	Commands	Setup

zSecure - Setup - Alert				
Command ==> _____				
Configure alert 1120: Major administrative activity				
Number of commands . . 100				
Do not generate alert for the following users (filter allowed)				
User 1	_____		
User 2	_____		
User 3	_____		
User 4	_____		
User 5	_____		
User 6	_____		
User 7	_____		
User 8	_____		
User 9	_____		
User 10	_____		

Figure 23. Setup Alert panel: Configuring major administrative activity (Alerts 1120 & 2120)

Note: zSecure Alert expects a value for the number of commands. If no input is provided, 100 is used as default.

Important groups (1701) configuration

When alert 1701, which means connection to an important group, is selected, the following panel is displayed:

Menu	Options	Info	Commands	Setup

zSecure - Setup - Alert				
Command ==> _____				
Specify important group(s)				
Group	SYS1	_____	_____
			_____	_____
			_____	_____
			_____	_____

Figure 24. Setup Alert panel: Configuring important groups (Alert 1701)

This panel enables you to enter up to 20 important groups.

It is possible to use a filter pattern to select more than one group. Filter patterns can contain a percent sign %, that is, one character, or can end with an asterisk *, that is, zero or more characters.

Tivoli Workload Scheduler (1804, 1805, 1806, 2804, 2805, 2806)

For RACF alerts 1804, 1805, or 1806, and ACF2 alerts 2804, 2805, or 2806, when it is selected, the Setup Alert panel is displayed.

Menu	Options	Info	Commands	Setup

zSecure - Setup - Alert				
Command ==> _____				
Enter application names				
Application name 1	.	.	_____	
Application name 2	.	.	_____	
Application name 3	.	.	_____	
Application name 4	.	.	_____	
Application name 5	.	.	_____	
Application name 6	.	.	_____	
Application name 7	.	.	_____	
Application name 8	.	.	_____	
Application name 9	.	.	_____	
Application name 10	.	.	_____	

Figure 25. Setup Alert panel: Configuring Tivoli Workload Scheduler (Alerts 1804, 1805, 1806, 2804, 2805, 2806)

You can specify up to 10 TWS applications.

Number of violations and logonids to exclude (2115) configuration

The following panel is displayed when you select this alert:

Menu	Options	Info	Commands	Setup

zSecure - Setup - Alert				
Command ==> _____				
Configure alert 1115: Too many violations				
Number of violations 10				
Exclude the following users from revocation				
User 1	.	.	.	_____
User 2	.	.	.	_____
User 3	.	.	.	_____
User 4	.	.	.	_____
User 5	.	.	.	_____
User 6	.	.	.	_____
User 7	.	.	.	_____
User 8	.	.	.	_____
User 9	.	.	.	_____
User 10	.	.	.	_____

Figure 26. Setup Alert panel: Configuring the number of violations and logonids to exclude (Alert 2115)

The following fields are displayed:

Number of violations

The minimum number of violations allowed in the history interval as specified on the Alert Configuration general settings panel by the field Average.

Valid values are numbers in the range 1 - 999. When not specified, a default value of 10 is used.

User 1-10

These fields enable you to specify the users that must be excluded from revocation.

It is possible to use a filter to select more than one user. Filters can contain *, that is, any one character, and can end in -, that is, zero or more characters.

Chapter 4. Periodical overview

A periodical overview can be sent as a reminder for the recipients and possibly served as a check on correct or changed settings.

For this purpose, job C2PJRECI and procedure C2PCRECI are supplied. You must copy job C2PJRECI to a data set that is used by your job scheduling software and adapt it to your needs. Specifically, you must adapt the parameter ACONF to reflect your Alert configuration and the parameter CONFIG to reflect your zSecure Alert-enabled zSecure configuration.

For general instructions for customizing zSecure-supplied jobs, see *IBM Security zSecure Admin and Audit for RACF: User Reference Manual*.

Chapter 5. Problem determination guide

Use this information to identify and troubleshoot problems with zSecure Alert.

A general outline describes how to determine if problems occur in the CKFCOLL or CKRCARLA programs that are used to provide standard functions for C2POLICE, which is the zSecure Alert main program. It provides a reference for common zSecure Alert abend codes and an explanation on how to diagnose license problems. It also gives you some troubleshooting hints for situations when zSecure Alert does not generate the alerts.

Information for problem diagnosis

Use these guidelines to identify and troubleshoot problems with zSecure Alert and zSecure Audit.

If you encounter a problem in the ISPF interface, see Chapter 2, “zSecure Alert configuration,” on page 3, or see the *User Reference Manual* for your zSecure product.

Information about CKFnnnn messages from zSecure Collect and abends in the C2PCOLL started task (program CKFCOLL) can be found in the *User Reference Manual* for your zSecure product.

For other problems, the first step is to look at the output of the zSecure Alert started task. You must decide whether you have a problem in the C2POLICE main program or in the CKRCARLA program that is used for the pre-processing step and for the actual reporting step. The zSecure Alert started task output is partially written to the spool and partially written to data sets as specified in the JCL of the started task C2POLICE.

CKRnnnnn messages are issued by zSecure Audit. They are documented in *IBM Security zSecure: Messages Guide*.

C2Pnnnnn messages are issued by the CKRCARLA program. They are documented in *IBM Security zSecure: Messages Guide*. Message numbers in the range 0 - 999 point to the zSecure Alert started task.

CKRCARLA problem diagnosis

If the problem you are experiencing is determined as a problem in the CKRCARLA processing, the next step is to determine if the problem occurs as part of pre-processing (also known as stage-1 processing) or as part of alert generation (also known as the reporting phase). Each use of CKRCARLA produces SYSPRINT output. The output for the most recent pre-processing run is available in the data set allocated to the SYSPRST1 DD-name in the zSecure Alert JCL. Likewise, the output for the most recent completed reporting run can be found in SYSPRRPT. Look at the JCL of the zSecure Alert started task to obtain the names of these data sets. Consider making a copy immediately, since these data sets are reused when zSecure Alert invokes CKRCARLA for a subsequent reporting interval (by default, once every hour). If zSecure Alert is still running, these data sets might already have been reused. Depending on the definition of the data set, the first part might have been overwritten by the current CKRCARLA instance. For reliable contents,

you must first stop the zSecure Alert started task. If you want to inspect the contents of the data set while the zSecure Alert started task is still running, you must ensure that the definition of the data set allows concurrent shared access.

In addition to the full SYSPRINT, selected output from any CKRCARLA invocation that ends with a nonzero Return Code is added to the data set allocated to the C2PDEBUG DD-name.

When inspecting the information in the SYSPRINT file, check that the input statements provided to CKRCARLA are as expected and look for CKRnnnnn messages. For diagnosing a problem report, this information is always crucial.

- If the SYSPRINT for a reporting run contains an error that relates to an unresolved LIKELIST keyword reference, this points to a problem in the stage 1 run.
- If the CKR messages indicate a syntax error, the most likely cause is an error in a skeleton member.

See the *User Reference Manual* for your zSecure product for further information.

zSecure Alert problem diagnosis

If zSecure Alert abends, see “General problems and abends.” If you get C2P messages that point to buffer size problems, see Chapter 2, “zSecure Alert configuration,” on page 3.

For other problems, contact IBM software support and provide the following information:

- A description of the circumstances under which the problem occurred
- The C2POLICE message log or the relevant part of the SYSLOG
- The JCL used, and the listing of the input commands.

General problems and abends

Use these guidelines to troubleshoot and respond to abends for zSecure Alert.

This section is for abends that occur in the C2POLICE program. If they occur in the CKFCOLL or CKRCARLA programs, see the *User Reference Manual* for your zSecure product.

The following list describes the most common system abend codes encountered with zSecure Alert and provides a suggestion for the possible cause and remedy. You must also first check the appropriate message manual for your operating system, which tells you the exact meaning of the abend and reason code.

- | | |
|------------|---|
| 001 | Problems with blocksize. Look at the message in your joblog to determine the DD-name. If you used a concatenation for this DD-name, make sure that the largest blocksize comes first. Or, specify the larger blocksize on a DCB=BLKSIZE= parameter on the first DD statement. |
| 047 | Load module is started from a non-APF authorized library. Make sure that the C2POLICE STEPLIB is APF-authorized. |
| 322 | CPU time limit exceeded. Check the job log for prior abend messages with a different abend code. If a prior abend occurred, solve this abend. |
| 722 | Too many output lines. |

80A878

GETMAIN error. Try to increase the REGION parameter on the EXEC statement. If you reached the maximum of your site, contact your system programmer.

913

Access denied to one of the data sets. Review the ICH408I or ACF99913 messages in the job log to determine which data set.

D37 B37

One of the output data sets was too small, or there was no space left on the volume to extend the data set. Look at the message in your job log to determine the DD-name.

EC6

An abend EC6 means that an abend occurred while in a UNIX service. You must have the reason code to know what it is about (like CPU time limit reached - reason FD1D).

For assistance with a problem by IBM Security zSecure, you must generally provide at least the SYSMDUMP, the JCL used, and the listing of the input commands.

License problems

zSecure Alert needs one of the zSecure Alert features to be installed and not disabled in z/OS PARMLIB member IFAPRDxx on the system where it runs. The features indicate the External Security Monitor and are represented by product codes ALERTRACF and ALERTACF2.

If you have a license problem with the zSecure Alert engine (C2POLICE), look in the C2PDEBUG file. Verify whether the information shown corresponds to what you expected.

Expected alerts do not show up

If the expected alerts do not show up, check for these possible configuration issues:

- zSecure Alert is configured to send the alert to a file, that is, option SE.A.A action R
- The alert is not in the active configuration. You can find the name of the active configuration from the operator command MODIFY C2POLICE,DISPLAY . You can look for C2P messages 127, 128, and 135. Recall that you *cannot* dynamically change *which* alert configuration is used: the Refresh action does *not* activate a different member. The member contents might have been changed since the last stage 1 run. If you changed it, you must consider the following questions:
 - Did you Verify the alert configuration?
 - Did you issue a Refresh action to bring the configuration online?
 - Did the refresh succeed?

You can verify it in the JESMSG LG file of the zSecure Alert started task C2POLICE, or in SYSLOG.

- The alert is in the active configuration but it is not selected.
- The SMF logging required for the alert is not activated. You must check whether SMFPRMxx specifies that the needed SMF record types are written. For the requirements for a predefined alert, see its description in Chapter 3, “Predefined alerts,” on page 41. You can find the current SMF options from the operator command DISPLAY SMF,O. For an installation defined alert, you must check

whether you specify correct filter criteria. You must also check whether the C2PCUST data set member <set name>VP contains the corresponding filter criteria.

- The WTOs required for the alert are not found. You must check whether the WTO is intercepted by MPFLSTxx or by one of the MPF-related exits. It can be either IEAVMXIT or an exit routine you name on the USEREXIT parameter in PARMLIB(MPFLSTxx). For more information, see MVS Init and Tuning Reference.

In the SYSPRINT output from a reporting run, described in “CKRCARLA problem diagnosis” on page 125, you can see whether the alert was issued. For a WTO, CKR1239 is issued. For an SNMP trap, CKR1227 is issued. If you find this message, check on the receiving end. For an email or text message, CKR1225 is issued. If you find this message, check if the email or text message is still on the spool in the C2REMAIL file of the zSecure Alert started task C2POLICE. If so, check the SMTP settings under option SE.7 and ask your system programmer for the correct parameters. If these settings are good, you might have an SMTP problem. If the email or text message is not on the spool, it was sent by SMTP. Check the SMTP log for further diagnosis.

If the SYSPRINT reveals that the alert was not issued, check for message CKR1240 (Could not resolve to any SNMP receivers). Check any messages on WTO with a nonzero Severity.

If no alert is being sent and you cannot find a reason, check in the SMF log or SYSLOG for WTOs. See whether the event you are looking for was logged. For a "moving window" alert, verify that the threshold was exceeded in the time window.

If none of these actions help, contact IBM software support with a description of the circumstances and the problem, the SYSPRINT from the reporting subtask, and if it seems applicable the SYSPRINT from the Stage-1 subtask as well, the JCL used, and any unexpected results encountered in the preceding diagnosis steps.

Appendix A. SNMP output

You can define your own SNMP traps. To define your SNMP traps, the LIST/SORTLIST-output must have a special form. zSecure Alert can automatically process the LIST/SORTLIST-output using NEWLIST SNMP. The special form of the output must be:

```
specific-trap ['-c community'] ['-g global-trap'.] ['-e enterprise'] /,  
variable_1 <contents to be assigned to variable_1> /,  
variable_2 <contents to be assigned to variable_2> /,  
...  
variable_n <contents to be assigned to variable_n>
```

The CARLa output conforming to this template is a set of assignment statements. It is processed by NEWLIST SNMP when generating the SNMP trap. The assignments can use following predefined variables and in the Management Information Base SCKRCARL(C2PMIB) as well as integers that represent user-defined variables. The range 400000 - 699999 is reserved for user-defined variables. You must use the four digits of the SNMP trap number followed by two digits of your own choice. Your SNMP-generating code can contain:

```
'eventIntegral' 'short description of the specific trap at hand' /,  
'eventWhen' datetime(datetimezone,0) /,
```

Here is an example of the CARLa that generates the required output:

```
)CM SNMP sortlist  
)SEL &C2PERCTP = SNMP  
  sortlist,  
    recno(nd),  
    '&c2pemem.' /,  
    'eventIntegral',  
    'Alert: APF list changed by SETPROG APF command' '-',  
    'System messages report that SETPROG APF command is issued' /,  
    'eventWhen' datetime(datetimezone,0) /,  
    '&c2pemem.00' MsgTxt1(0,hor) /,  
    'whereSYSTEM' system(0)  
)ENDSEL
```

The variables in this example are 'eventIntegral', 'eventWhen', '&c2pemem.00', and 'whereSYSTEM'. The variables 'eventIntegral', 'eventWhen', and 'whereSYSTEM' are predefined, while '&c2pemem.00' is an installation defined variable.

The contents of a variable must not contain line breaks. It might have to be enforced with a repeat group format modifier firstonly, or hor.

Between '&c2pemem.', which is called the *specific-trap* field, and /, on the line after recno(nd), you can insert the options -c *community*, -g *global-trap*, and -e *enterprise*. The default value of *community* is public while *global-trap* defaults to 6, indicating an enterprise-specific trap, and *enterprise* defaults to 1.3.6.1.4.1.9399.1.2, indicating enterprises.consul.software.zAlert. For information about the specific-trap, community, global-trap, and enterprise parameters, you must consult SNMP literature like RFC 1215.

The following predefined variables can appear in SNMP output.

Table 7. Predefined variables that can appear in SNMP output

Variable	Description
eventIntegral	Human-readable alert title. Mostly the same as the title of the email report.
eventWhen	Date and time.
fromWhereCONSOLE	The console from which the user entered the command.
fromWhereTERMINAL	Terminal ID.
onWhatACCESS	RACF allowed access.
onWhatALLOWED	The access level allowed by the security rules, except for access granted because of WARNING mode; see onWhatGRANTED.
onWhatAUTHORITY	System-level authority that is granted or removed.
onWhatCLASS	The class in which a general profile resides.
onWhatDSNAME	Depending on the alert, the data set that is updated, on which an access attempt is made, or that is the origin of a program.
onWhatGRANTED	The access level granted. It includes access granted because of WARNING mode; see onWhatALLOWED.
onWhatGROUP-AUTHORITY	Group-level authority that is granted or removed.
onWhatINTENT	The access level requested.
onWhatNEW-PERMISSIONS	The permissions of a UNIX file or directory after a chmod command.
onWhatOLD-PERMISSIONS	The permissions of a UNIX file or directory before a chmod command.
onWhatPATH1	Requested path name (corresponding with extended-length relocate section 263).
onWhatPROFILE	The general resource or data set profile that is used for access checks.
onWhatRACFCMD-AUTH	Connect authority used in a RACF command.
onWhatRACFCMD-GROUP	Group that is used in a RACF command.
onWhatRACFCMD-NAME	Programmer name of the user that is used in a RACF command.
onWhatRACFCMD-USER	User ID of the user that is used in a RACF or ACF2 command.
onWhatRESOURCE	The resource on which RACF or ACF2 makes access checks. This resource can be a general resource. It also can be the resource that is created from a data set name using the RACF Naming Convention Table. For SMF describing class PROGRAM, it is the name of the program that is run.
onWhatUNIX-ACCESS-ALLOWED	Allowed UNIX access.
onWhatUNIX-ACCESS-INTENT	Intended UNIX access.

Table 7. Predefined variables that can appear in SNMP output (continued)

Variable	Description
onWhatUNIX-PATHNAME	The absolute or relative path of a file or directory. If the CKFREEZE file used was made with UNIX=YES (and AUTOMOUNT=YES) and contains the file or directory, it is an absolute path name.
onWhatVOLUME	The volume on which a data set resides or <SMS MANAGED> if the data set is managed by SMS.
onWhatWORKTYPE	'TSO' or 'OMVS' depending on the type of logon.
whatATTEMPTS	The number of attempts made.
whatCOMPCODE	Job or step completion code.
whatCOMPSTAT	Job or step completion status.
whatCOUNT-SMF-LOST	The number of SMF records that were lost due to full buffers.
whatDESC	Depending on the status of the event, this field contains Success, Undefined user, Violation, or Warning, depending on the status of the event.
whatEVENT	Human readable event ID.
whatEVENTDESC	The name of the event, an indication of the result (Success, Warning, Failure, or Undefined), and a short explanation of the event qualifier (Invalid password, for example).
whatEVENTQUAL	Numeric event qualifier.
whatJOBID	Job ID of the job in which the event triggered or which is created because of the event.
whatJOBNAME	Job name of the job in which the event triggered or which is created because of the event (for example, in a logon).
whatJOBTAG	System ID, job name, reader date, and reader time.
whatLOGSTR	SAF log string.
whatPARM	ACF2 GSO field, old value, and new value
whatPROGRAM	Program name.
whatPWDCHANGES	The number of password changes made in the last measurement interval
whatRACFCMD	RACF command that triggered the alert. Ignored (because of insufficient authority) keywords are labeled <IGNORED>.
whatRECORDDESC	A descriptive string that summarizes the record.
whatRULE	ACF2 rule
whatSTC	The name of a started task procedure.
whatSTEPNAME	Step name.
whatSUBTYPE	SMF record subtype.
whatTYPE	SMF numeric record type.

Table 7. Predefined variables that can appear in SNMP output (continued)

Variable	Description
whatUACC	The UACC set on a profile.
whatVIOLATIONS	Number of violations.
whatWTO-MESSAGE	The first line of output of a WTO. This line starts with the WTO message ID.
whenSMF-FAILURE	The start date and time of the period in which SMF data was lost due to full buffers. The end date and time can be found in the eventWhen field.
whenStart	Start date and start time.
whereSYSTEM	System name.
whereSYSTYPE	Operating system type.
whoNAME	Programmer name of the user in whoUSERID.
whoUSERID	User ID of the user that caused the SMF or WTO record to be written.

Appendix B. Tivoli Enterprise Console and NetView configuration

Use the information in this appendix to:

- Configure the Tivoli Enterprise Console
- Configure NetView on AIX and Windows for zSecure Alert
- Add a user-defined alert to a Management Information Base
- Create a user-defined BAROC file with Tivoli Enterprise Console classes
- Create addtrap commands for AIX and Windows systems

Configuring Tivoli Enterprise Console

About this task

This section explains how Tivoli Enterprise Console can be configured to properly display zSecure Alert traps and user-defined zSecure Alert traps.

This task involves carrying out a shell script to import certain trap aspects into an SNMP trap configuration file, and importing a Basic Representation of Object in C (BAROC) Tivoli Enterprise Console configuration file into a Tivoli rule base. You can find a detailed explanation in IBM-supplied Tivoli Enterprise Console documentation at publib.boulder.ibm.com/tividd/td/EnterpriseConsole3.9.html. Some of the necessary steps are highlighted for you. Tivoli Enterprise Console version 3.9 was employed on AIX 5.2.

It is assumed that you already created and activated a rule base, which is called `crm_rb` in this text. It is also assumed that a NetView Server Daemon (`nvserverd`) is running, and that the NetView trap configuration file (`/usr/0V/conf/tecint.conf`) indicates that the NetView Server Daemon must forward events to Tivoli Enterprise Console. Older Tivoli Enterprise Console setups might not include a `nvserverd` adapter. They might require some OID and CDS configuration files in addition to those scripts mentioned in this text. Such setups are not discussed here.

In this text, `zSecure-Alert-addtraps.sh` is used as a shorthand for the IBM-supplied trap configuration shell script. Similarly, `user-addtraps.sh` is used as a shorthand for a user-defined trap configuration script. The Windows versions of these files are called `zSecure-Alert-addtraps.bat` and `user-addtraps.bat`. Furthermore, `zSecure-Alert.baroc` is a shorthand for the IBM-supplied BAROC file, while `user-Alert.baroc` is a shorthand for a user-defined BAROC file. Creation of `user-Alert.baroc` is discussed in "User-defined BAROC files with Tivoli Enterprise Console classes" on page 139 and creation of `user-addtraps.sh` is discussed in "Addtrap commands for AIX" on page 140. You can download the most recent versions of the IBM-supplied files from the zSecure Knowledge Center available online at http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/SS2RWS_2.2.0/com.ibm.zsecure.doc_2.2.0/landing/samples.html. You can also download them from the latest *IBM Security zSecure: Documentation CD*. The files are accessible from the "Sample (Tivoli Enterprise Console and NetView Configuration, XSLT)" entry under **zSecure** in the Contents panel.

Most of the commands in the following steps require superuser privileges. It is also necessary to have the wrb and addtrap commands in your \$PATH. It can be achieved by carrying out the following command, which starts with a dot and a space:

```
. /etc/Tivoli/setup_env.sh
```

The following commands pertain to IBM-supplied and user-defined traps. When you have no user-defined traps, you can ignore any steps that involve user-addtraps.sh and user-Alert.baroc.

Procedure

1. Stop the Tivoli Enterprise Console if it is running.
2. Locate a directory with the latest version of the zSecure-Alert-addtraps.sh file.

You can download this file and other configuration files to a local directory from the IBM Security zSecure information center available online. Or, you can download it from the latest *IBM Security zSecure: Documentation CD*.

3. Locate a directory with the latest version of the user-addtraps.sh file.
4. From the folder which contains the zSecure-Alert-addtraps.sh file, carry out `sh zSecure-Alert-addtraps.sh`. It puts IBM-supplied zSecure Alert definitions in the NetView trap configuration file (`/usr/0V/conf/C/trapd.conf`). If you carried out this step before, it replaces older IBM-supplied zSecure Alert definitions with new ones.
5. From the folder which contains the user-addtraps.sh file, carry out `sh user-addtraps.sh`. It puts user-defined zSecure Alert definitions in the NetView trap configuration file (`/usr/0V/conf/C/trapd.conf`). If you carried out this step before, it replaces older user-defined definitions with new ones.
6. Remove existing user-defined Tivoli Enterprise Console classes; this step is necessary only if you have imported user-Alert.baroc before. You must remove these classes before the next step is carried out.

```
wrb -delrbclass user-Alert.baroc crm_rb
```

7. Remove existing zSecure Alert Tivoli Enterprise Console classes; this step is necessary only if you imported zSecure-Alert.baroc before:

```
wrb -delrbclass zSecure-Alert.baroc crm_rb
```

8. Check whether netview.baroc has been imported. The file must be imported before the next steps can be carried out. Using the Tivoli Enterprise Console Server, you can check whether netview.baroc has been imported. In the Tivoli Enterprise Console Server Desktop for Administrator window, double-click the Event Server icon. Then in the Event Server Rule Bases window, right click the crm_rb icon, and select **Import**. In the Import Into Rule Bases window, the imported classes are listed below the **Position to insert imported class file** text. The netview.baroc file must be listed there. If it is not listed, you must import the file.

9. Import the zSecure Alert BAROC file zSecure-Alert.baroc into Tivoli:

```
wrb -imprbclass zSecure-Alert.baroc crm_rb
```

10. Import the user-defined BAROC file user-Alert.baroc into Tivoli. Importing succeeds only if the previous step has been carried out.

```
wrb -imprbclass user-Alert.baroc crm_rb
```

11. Compile and load the crm_rb rule base:

```
wrb -comprules crm_rb wrb -loadrb crm_rb
```

12. Run the following commands to stop and restart the Tivoli Enterprise Console Event Server:

```
wstopesvr
wstartesvr
```

13. Start the Tivoli Enterprise Console. To check whether the Tivoli Enterprise Console server is running again, issue the `wstatesvr` command.
14. You can send a sample trap using the `snmptrap` command, in which you must replace 10.10.3.52 with the IP number of your computer.

```
/usr/0V/bin/snmptrap -p 162 10.10.3.52 \  
.1.3.6.1.4.1.9399.1.2 "" 6 1601 "" \  
.1.3.6.1.4.1.9399.1.2.1 OctetString "Variable eventIntegral sample" \  
.1.3.6.1.4.1.9399.1.2.2 OctetString "Variable eventWhen sample" \  
.1.3.6.1.4.1.9399.1.2.31 OctetString "Variable whatWTO-MESSAGE sample" \  
.1.3.6.1.4.1.9399.1.2.6 OctetString "Variable whereSYSTEM sample"
```

15. You can check whether the trap was correctly processed. You can issue the `wtdumprl` command and view the last few lines of its output. You can also check this using the Tivoli Enterprise Console.

Configuring NetView on AIX and Windows

About this task

To configure NetView on AIX for zSecure Alert, you must load the (possibly user-extended) zSecure Alert MIB into NetView. Then you must carry out the `sh zSecure-Alert-addtraps.sh` and `sh user-addtraps.sh` commands. These commands are discussed in “Configuring Tivoli Enterprise Console” on page 133. It put some zSecure Alert definitions in the NetView trap configuration file `/usr/0V/conf/C/trapd.conf`. If you carried out these commands before, existing zSecure Alert trap definitions are replaced with new ones. Tivoli NetView version 7.1.5 was employed on AIX 5.2 to carry out the NetView configuration. You must use NetView version 7.1.5 or above.

To configure NetView on Windows for zSecure Alert, you must load the (possibly user-extended) zSecure Alert MIB into NetView. Then you must perform the following steps. If you have no user-defined traps, you can ignore the steps that involve `user-addtraps.bat`.

1. Locate a directory with the latest version of the `zSecure-Alert-addtraps.bat` file. One such directory is samples on the latest *IBM Security zSecure: Documentation CD*.
2. Locate a directory with the latest version of the `user-addtraps.bat` file.
3. From the folder which contains the `zSecure-Alert-addtraps.bat` file, carry out `zSecure-Alert-addtraps.bat`. It puts the zSecure Alert definitions in the right place. If you carried out this step before, it replaces older zSecure Alert definitions with new ones.
4. From the folder which contains the `user-addtraps.bat` file, carry out `user-addtraps.bat`. It puts user-defined zSecure Alert definitions in the right place. If you carried out this step before, it replaces older user-defined definitions with new ones.

To carry out these steps, NetView version 7.1.5 was employed on Microsoft Windows 2000 (Service Pack 4).

If you want NetView on Windows to forward events to Tivoli Enterprise Console, you need additional configuration. To add the zSecure Alert events, you must add entries for them in the `tecad_nv6k.cds` and `tecad_nv6k.oid` files. Then rerun the configurator again or edit the `CONF` file to include them. See the *IBM Tivoli*

Add a user-defined alert to an MIB

This section describes the extension of a Management Information Base (MIB) with a user-defined alert, also called a trap. An MIB can be imported by using NetView running on AIX or Windows. It is discussed in “Configuring NetView on AIX and Windows” on page 135.

zSecure Alert supplies the original MIB file that is going to be extended. Its name looks like *zSecure-Alert-v210.mib*.

The main components of a trap are variables. Although you can define a trap by using only variables defined in the zSecure Alert MIB, it is also possible to define and use additional variables. In “Variables,” it shows how variables can be defined in an MIB. These variables can be used in traps, whose definition is discussed in “TRAPS” on page 137. “Add a user-defined alert to an MIB” indicates how several MIB files can be merged. This is necessary if you have a zSecure Alert-supplied but user-extended MIB, and then receive a new zSecure Alert MIB.

Variables

You can choose the variables that are part of a trap from the variables already defined in the zSecure Alert-supplied MIB, but you can also define new variables, add them to the MIB, and use them in a trap. The full variable definition syntax can be found in RFC 1212 (www.faqs.org/rfcs). The following example presents you a simplified variable definition syntax and a variable definition:

<i>name</i>	OBJECT-TYPE	<i>user-whatATTEMPTS</i>	OBJECT-TYPE
	SYNTAX <i>syntax</i>		SYNTAX <i>DisplayString (SIZE (0..1023))</i>
	ACCESS <i>access</i>		ACCESS <i>read-only</i>
	STATUS <i>status</i>		STATUS <i>mandatory</i>
	DESCRIPTION		DESCRIPTION
	<i>description</i>		<i>"Number of password attempts"</i>
	::= { Alert <i>number</i> }		::= { Alert <i>400047</i> }

A variable has the following components:

name The *name* must start with a lowercase letter. It must consist of lowercase letters, uppercase letters, digits, and dashes (-) only. An example variable name is

user-whatATTEMPTS

The variable names already defined by zSecure Alert are short descriptions of alert aspects. If there are several words in a variable name, each word except the first starts with an uppercase letter *justLikeThis*. You can use these conventions as well. To avoid clashes with any future zSecure Alert-supplied variable names, you can put *user* or *user-* in front of each user-defined variable name, as in the sample variable *user-whatATTEMPTS*.

Most zSecure Alert-supplied variable names contain *who*, *what*, *onWhat*, *when*, *where*, *whereTo*, or *fromWhere*, giving an indication of the aspect domain. Also, if there is a direct correspondence between a variable and a CARLa, or CARLa Auditing and Reporting Language, field, the variable name ends with the field name written in uppercase letters.

syntax The *syntax* can have several forms but it typically is
DisplayString (SIZE (0..1023))

With this form, the variable can contain 1023 characters at most.

access The *access* can have several forms but it typically is
read-only

status The *status* can have several forms but it typically is
mandatory

description
The *description* is a quoted string like
"this description"

number
The *number* is a positive integer like
432100

The variable name and number must be unique in the MIB you want to extend.
The MIB defines several variables with OBJECT-TYPE statements. Each statement starts with

name OBJECT-TYPE

and ends with

::= { Alert *number* }

The new variable must get a name which does not yet occur in front of any OBJECT-TYPE keyword in the MIB. The new variable must get a number which does not yet occur in a ::= { Alert *number* } in the MIB. You must use the four digits of the trap number followed by two digits of your own choice. As indicated in "TRAPS," a user-defined trap number must be in the range 4000-6999. Therefore, the number of a user-defined variable must be in the range 400000-699999, which is the range reserved for user-defined variables. Variable numbers outside of this range are reserved for IBM.

Note: These reservations pertain to enterprise tree
iso.org.dod.internet.private.enterprises.consul.software.zAlert, coded as
1.3.6.1.4.1.9399.1.2.

When you determine the components of a variable definition, you add the definition to the MIB by inserting it right after an existing variable definition. The definition ends with ::= { Alert *n* }, in the MIB.

For your convenience, sort variable definitions so their variable numbers appear in increasing order. Sorting makes it easy to see which variable numbers are already reserved. The sorting order is not mandatory.

For detailed information about variables, see RFC 1212 at www.faqs.org/rfcs.

TRAPS

The full trap definition syntax can be found in RFC 1215 (www.faqs.org/rfcs). A simplified trap definition syntax and a sample trap definition look like this example:

<i>name</i> TRAP-TYPE		<i>smfDataLost</i> TRAP-TYPE
ENTERPRISE Alert		ENTERPRISE Alert
VARIABLES {		VARIABLES {
<i>v₁</i> ,		<i>eventIntegral</i> ,

$v_2,$ \dots v_m $\}$ DESCRIPTION <i>description</i> ::= <i>number</i>	$\}$ DESCRIPTION "SMF data is lost" ::= 1601
--	---

As in the trap definition syntax, a trap definition has several components:

name The name of a trap must start with a lowercase letter. It must consist of lowercase letters, uppercase letters, digits, and dashes (-) only. An example trap name is

smfDataLost

list of variables

Variables v_1, v_2, \dots, v_m to be sent as part of the trap. Each variable listed in the VARIABLES section of a trap must have been defined as an OBJECT-TYPE. You can read about variable definitions in "Variables" on page 136.

Note: according to the MIB syntax rules, a trap with zero variables cannot have a VARIABLES { ... } section.

description

The trap names already defined by zSecure Alert are short descriptions of alerts. If there are several words in a trap name, each word except the first starts with an uppercase letter justLikeThis. You can use these trap naming conventions as well. The description is a quoted string like

"this description"

number

The number is a positive integer such as:

1601

The trap name and number must not yet occur in the MIB you want to extend.

To create a user-defined trap, you can simply copy a zSecure Alert-supplied trap definition. Keep the variable names and overwrite the name, description, and number with unique values. Take the following zSecure Alert-supplied trap as a starting point.

```
smfDataLost TRAP-TYPE
  ENTERPRISE Alert
  VARIABLES {
    eventIntegral,
    eventWhen,
    whatWTO-MESSAGE,
    whereSYSTEM
  }
  DESCRIPTION
    "System messages report that SMF data is lost (5)"
  ::= 1601
```

The italic parts of the trap definition can be changed to obtain the following definition:

```
mirrorGroupConnected TRAP-TYPE
  ENTERPRISE Alert
  VARIABLES {
    eventIntegral,
    eventWhen,
    user-whatMirrorGroup
```



```

    }
    DESCRIPTION
        "Connect to mirror group defined"
    ::= 4001

```

As you can see, two zSecure Alert-supplied variables have been retained and the other variables have been replaced by a user-defined variable `user-whatMirrorGroup`. Each user-defined variable must have been defined as an OBJECT-TYPE see “Variables” on page 136.

The trap name and number must be unique across the zSecure Alert-defined and user-extended MIB. A new trap must get a name which does not yet occur in front of any TRAP-TYPE keyword in the MIB. The new trap must get a number which does not yet occur after any TRAP-TYPE ... ::= in the MIB.

The number must be in the range 4000-6999, which is the range reserved for user-defined traps. Trap numbers outside of this range are reserved for IBM. (These reservations pertain to enterprise tree `iso.org.dod.internet.private.enterprises.consul.software.zAlert`, coded as 1.3.6.1.4.1.9399.1.2.) The trap number must be the same as the alert number which you see in the ISPF zSecure Alert interface. The range 4000 - 4999 is intended for RACF alerts. The range 5000 - 5999 is intended for ACF2 alerts. The range 6000 - 6999 is intended for ACF2 alerts.

A new trap can be added to an MIB by inserting its definition after some trap ending with ::= *n*, where *n* is the trap number, which is already present in the MIB.

You can sort trap definitions so their numbers appear in increasing order. Sorting makes it easy to see which trap numbers are already reserved. The sorting order is not mandatory.

For detailed information about traps, refer to RFC 1215, which can be found on www.faqs.org/rfcs.

MIB file merging

When you add some traps and variables to an MIB and get a replacement or upgrade MIB from IBM, you must copy the customer defined traps in the range 4000-6999 and variables in the range 400000- 699999 from the old MIB to the new MIB. That ensures that the customer defined traps and variables are still recognized when you unload the old MIB file and load the new MIB file.

User-defined BAROC files with Tivoli Enterprise Console classes

This section describes the creation of a user-defined BAROC file.

A user-defined BAROC file can be imported by Tivoli Enterprise Console as discussed in “Configuring Tivoli Enterprise Console” on page 133.

While it is possible to extend the zSecure Alert BAROC file (`zSecure-Alert.baroc`) with classes and variables, you must create a separate BAROC file instead. You can call that file `user-Alert.baroc` here, but you must give it another specific name. Users must keep the zSecure Alert-supplied and the user-defined BAROC files as separate entities.

You must take the definitions of the following sample `user-Alert.baroc` file as a starting point. Here, v_1, v_2, \dots, v_m is a list of all user-defined variables. Each #

character starts a comment which runs to the end of the line. Occurrences of `USER_DEFINED_ALERT` can be replaced with some more appropriate phrase, like `MY_COMPANY_ALERT`. It is important to note that the user-defined `user-Alert.baroc` file depends on the `zSecure-Alert.baroc` file, which provides several `zSecure Alert BAROC` classes.

```
TEC CLASS: USER_DEFINED_ALERT ISA ZSECURE_ALERT
    DEFINES {
        v1: STRING; # e.g. user-whatATTEMPTS: STRING;
        v2: STRING; # e.g. user-whatMirrorGroup: STRING;
        ...
        vm: STRING; # e.g. user-whoManager: STRING;
    };
END

TEC CLASS: USER_DEFINED_ALERT_HARMLESS ISA USER_DEFINED_ALERT
    DEFINES {
        severity: default = HARMLESS;
    };
END

TEC CLASS: USER_DEFINED_ALERT_UNKNOWN ISA USER_DEFINED_ALERT
    DEFINES {
        severity: default = UNKNOWN;
    };
END

TEC CLASS: USER_DEFINED_ALERT_WARNING ISA USER_DEFINED_ALERT
    DEFINES {
        severity: default = WARNING;
    };
END

TEC CLASS: USER_DEFINED_ALERT_MINOR ISA USER_DEFINED_ALERT
    DEFINES {
        severity: default = MINOR; };
END

TEC CLASS: USER_DEFINED_ALERT_CRITICAL ISA USER_DEFINED_ALERT
    DEFINES {
        severity: default = CRITICAL;
    };
END

TEC CLASS: USER_DEFINED_ALERT_FATAL ISA USER_DEFINED_ALERT
    DEFINES {
        severity: default = FATAL;
    };
END
```

Addtrap commands for AIX

This section describes the creation of a shell script with user-defined addtrap commands.

The shell script is intended for execution on an AIX computer that runs Tivoli Enterprise Console or NetView, as discussed in “Configuring Tivoli Enterprise Console” on page 133. “Addtrap commands for Windows” on page 142 describes the creation of a script with user-defined addtrap commands for Windows computers.

Each addtrap command corresponds with a single user-defined trap present in the `zSecure Alert`-supplied and user-extended MIB. It is discussed in “Add a user-defined alert to an MIB” on page 136. You must put the list of addtrap

commands in a script separate from the zSecure Alert-supplied script. Your list of addtrap commands cannot then be accidentally lost when IBM provides a new script version. The script to be created can be called `user-addtraps.sh` in this text but you must give it another specific name.

Suppose the trap numbers (to be found right after `::=` operators) in the MIB are n_1, n_2, \dots , and n_m . Each of these numbers should lie in the range of 4000-6999 reserved for user-defined traps. Trap numbers outside of this range, like 1601, are reserved for IBM.

Suppose the corresponding user-defined trap names, which can be found right before TRAP-TYPE keywords, in the MIB are $name_1, name_2, \dots$, and $name_m$.

First assign a severity s_i to each user-defined trap i . A severity can be any of the following codes:

- 0 harmless/cleared
- 1 indeterminate or unknown
- 2 warning
- 3 minor
- 4 critical
- 5 major or fatal

Suppose that you assign the severities s_1, s_2, \dots , and s_m to the user-defined traps. Each severity s_i corresponds with a class name cn_i :

Table 8. Severity levels assigned to class names

Severity	Description	Class name
0	harmless/cleared	USER_DEFINED_ALERT_HARMLESS
1	indeterminate/unknown	USER_DEFINED_ALERT_UNKNOWN
2	warning	USER_DEFINED_ALERT_WARNING
3	minor	USER_DEFINED_ALERT_MINOR
4	critical	USER_DEFINED_ALERT_CRITICAL
5	major/fatal	USER_DEFINED_ALERT_FATAL

The correspondence between severities and class names is specified in the BAROC file, whose creation is described in “User-defined BAROC files with Tivoli Enterprise Console classes” on page 139.

Next, devise a succinct description d_i of the trap. You can use the MIB description of the trap. Finally, make a list of names of variables of the traps in the order in which they occur in the MIB: $v_{i,1}, v_{i,2}, \dots, v_{i,j}$.

Then for each name $name_i$, corresponding trap number n_i , severity s_i , class name c_i , description d_i , and variables $v_{i,1}, v_{i,2}, \dots, v_{i,j}$, add the following lines to `user-addtraps.sh`:

```
addtrap -l name_i -s n_i -S s_i -g 6 -n Alert \
-i 1.3.6.1.4.1.9399.1.2 -o A \
-c "Status Events" -e c_i \
-D d_i \
-E 'v_{i,1}' -V '$V1' \
```

```
-E 'vi,2' -V '$V2' \
...
-E 'vi,j' -V '$Vj' \
-t 0 -f - -F '$S $1'
```

Here is an example of an addtrap command, derived from the sample user-defined mirrorGroupConnected trap presented in “TRAPS” on page 137. The trap has severity 3 (-S 3), which corresponds with the USER_DEFINED_ALERT_MINOR class.

```
addtrap -l mirrorGroupConnected -s 4001 -S 3 -g 6 -n Alert \
-i 1.3.6.1.4.1.9399.1.2 -o A \
-c "Status Events" -e USER_DEFINED_ALERT_MINOR \
-D "Connect to mirror group defined" \
-E 'eventIntegral' -V '$V1' \
-E 'eventWhen' -V '$V2' \
-E 'user-whatMirrorGroup' -V '$V3' \
-t 0 -f - -F '$S $1'
```

For other sample addtrap commands, you can look at the zSecure-Alert-addtraps.sh script.

Note:

1. The addtrap command and its options are case-sensitive.
2. Each backslash in the command indicates that the command is continued on the next line.
3. Each variable name in that script starts with an underscore (_), unlike the variable names in the zSecure Alert-supplied MIB. The underscores ensure that the variables are grouped in trap displays. You can also put underscores in front of variable names in user-addtraps.sh.

When you already have a user-addtraps.sh script and have added a number of new traps to your MIB file, you must extend user-addtraps.sh by appending lines corresponding with the new user-defined traps. Similarly, after removing a trap from the MIB, you must also remove the corresponding addtrap line from user-addtraps.sh. Finally, when you want to change some aspects of a trap such as severity, you can change the corresponding addtrap line.

After creating or changing user-addtraps.sh, you must run the script to notify Tivoli Enterprise Console of new or changed traps. If you have changed aspects of user-defined traps in the Tivoli Enterprise Console user interface, you can rerun the user-addtraps.sh file to revert these aspects to the user-addtraps.sh-provided values. If you do not want to change the aspects of a certain trap (for example, with name *name_i*), you must remove the addtrap -l *name_i* ... lines from the user-addtraps.sh file before you rerun it. Even better, do not remove the addtrap command but adjust it to reflect the current trap aspects.

Addtrap commands for Windows

This section describes the creation and use of a file with addtrap commands corresponding with user-defined traps in an MIB. The file is intended to be executed on a Windows computer running NetView. It is discussed in “Configuring NetView on AIX and Windows” on page 135. “Addtrap commands for AIX” on page 140 describes the creation of a script with user-defined addtrap commands for AIX computers.

You must create a file user-addtraps.bat other than the zSecure Alert-supplied zSecure-Alert-addtraps.bat file with addtrap commands. This way, your

user-defined addtrap commands cannot be lost when IBM provides a new version of zSecure-Alert-addtraps.bat. Although the file to be created can be called user-addtraps.bat in this text, you can give it another more specific name.

Suppose the user-defined trap numbers, which can be found right after ::= operators, in the zSecure Alert-supplied and user-extended MIB (for example, zSecure-Alert-v210.mib) are n_1, n_2, \dots , and n_m . Each of these numbers must lie in the range of 4000-6999 reserved for user-defined traps. Trap numbers outside of this range are reserved for IBM.

First assign a severity to each user-defined trap. A severity can be 0 (harmless or cleared), 1 (indeterminate or unknown), 2 (warning), 3 (minor), 4 (critical), or 5 (major or fatal). Suppose severities s_1, s_2, \dots , and s_m are assigned to the traps corresponding with trap numbers n_1, n_2, \dots , and n_m .

Suppose the corresponding user-defined trap names (to be found right before TRAP-TYPE keywords) in the MIB are $name_1, name_2, \dots$, and $name_m$.

Next, for each name $name_i$, corresponding trap number n_i , and corresponding severity s_i , add the following line to user-addtraps.bat:

```
addtrap -l name_i -s n_i -S s_i -g 6 -n Alert
-i 1.3.6.1.4.1.9399.1.2 -o A
-c "Status Events" -t 0 -f - -F "$S $1\n$# args: $*"
```

Here is an example of an addtrap command, derived from the sample user-defined mirrorGroupConnected trap presented in "TRAPS" on page 137. The trap has severity 3 (minor).

```
addtrap -l mirrorGroupConnected -s 4001 -S 3 -g 6 -n Alert
-i 1.3.6.1.4.1.9399.1.2 -o A
-c "Status Events" -t 0 -f - -F "$S $1\n$# args: $*"
```

For other sample addtrap commands, you can look at the zSecure-Alert-addtraps.bat script. The addtrap command and its options are case-sensitive.

After loading the MIB, you must run user-addtraps.bat to notify NetView of certain aspects (like severity) of the user-defined traps. When you already have a file called user-addtraps.bat and a number of new user-defined traps, you can extend the user-addtraps.bat file with lines corresponding with the new user-defined traps. When you remove a user-defined trap from the MIB, you must also remove the corresponding addtrap line from the user-addtraps.bat file. Finally, when you want to change some aspects of a user-defined trap, you can change the corresponding addtrap line.

After changing user-addtraps.bat, you must rerun the file to notify NetView of new or changed user-defined trap aspects.

Note: If you have changed aspects of user-defined traps in NetView, you can rerun the user-addtraps.bat file to revert these aspects to the user-addtraps.bat file-provided values. If you do not want to change the aspects of a certain trap, (for example, with name $name_i$), you must remove the addtrap -l $name_i$... line from the user-addtraps.bat file before you rerun it.

Appendix C. SYSLOG format for QRadar SIEM

User defined syslog alerts (see Chapter 2. zSecure Alert configuration -> Installation defined alerts) that are to be sent to IBM Security QRadar SIEM need to include a **whoUSERID** tag. QRadar chooses this tag for setting the Username field.

To let QRadar SIEM search, view, and report on tags other than whoUSERID, you can create QRadar SIEM custom event and flow properties. This topic is discussed in the *Custom Event and Flow Properties* chapter of the *IBM Security QRadar SIEM Users Guide*, as well as in the QRadar SIEM built-in product help system.

Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing
IBM Corporation
North Castle Drive
Armonk, NY 10504-1785
U.S.A.

For license inquiries regarding double-byte (DBCS) information, contact the IBM Intellectual Property Department in your country or send inquiries, in writing, to:

Intellectual Property Licensing
Legal and Intellectual Property Law
IBM Japan, Ltd.
1623-14, Shimotsuruma, Yamato-shi
Kanagawa 242-8502 Japan

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement might not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web

sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (i) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (ii) the mutual use of the information which has been exchanged, should contact:

IBM Corporation
2Z4A/101
11400 Burnet Road
Austin, TX 78758 U.S.A.

Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases payment of a fee.

The licensed program described in this document and all licensed material available for it are provided by IBM under terms of the IBM Customer Agreement, IBM International Program License Agreement or any equivalent agreement between us.

Any performance data contained herein was determined in a controlled environment. Therefore, the results obtained in other operating environments may vary significantly. Some measurements may have been made on development-level systems and there is no guarantee that these measurements will be the same on generally available systems. Furthermore, some measurement may have been estimated through extrapolation. Actual results may vary. Users of this document should verify the applicable data for their specific environment.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

All statements regarding IBM's future direction or intent are subject to change or withdrawal without notice, and represent goals and objectives only.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to the names and addresses used by an actual business enterprise is entirely coincidental.

COPYRIGHT LICENSE:

This information contains sample application programs in source language, which illustrate programming techniques on various operating platforms. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM, for the purposes of developing, using, marketing or distributing application programs conforming to the application programming interface for the operating platform for which the sample programs are written. These examples have not

been thoroughly tested under all conditions. IBM, therefore, cannot guarantee or imply reliability, serviceability, or function of these programs. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM for the purposes of developing, using, marketing, or distributing application programs conforming to IBM's application programming interfaces.

If you are viewing this information in softcopy form, the photographs and color illustrations might not be displayed.

Trademarks

IBM, the IBM logo, and ibm.com are trademarks or registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corp., registered in many jurisdictions worldwide. Other product and service names might be trademarks of IBM or other companies. A current list of IBM trademarks is available on the Web at "Copyright and trademark information" at www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml.

Adobe, the Adobe logo, Acrobat, PostScript, and the PostScript logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States, and/or other countries.

IT Infrastructure Library is a registered trademark of the Central Computer and Telecommunications Agency which is now part of the Office of Government Commerce.

Intel, Intel logo, Intel Inside, Intel Inside logo, Intel Centrino, Intel Centrino logo, Celeron, Intel Xeon, Intel SpeedStep, Itanium, and Pentium are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, and the Windows logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

ITIL is a registered trademark, and a registered community trademark of the Office of Government Commerce, and is registered in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Cell Broadband Engine is a trademark of Sony Computer Entertainment, Inc. in the United States, other countries, or both and is used under license therefrom.

Linear Tape-Open, LTO, the LTO Logo, Ultrium and the Ultrium Logo are trademarks of HP, IBM Corp. and Quantum in the U.S. and other countries.

Other company, product, and service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

Index

A

- abend, problem determination 126
- accessibility xii
- ACF2 data set alerts 97
- ACF2 predefined alerts 90
- ACF2 user alerts 90
- action specification
 - ISPF interface 38
- add alerts 30
- address lists for email 24
- alert
 - configuration process 3
 - layout, email 45
- Alert category 20
- alert configuration
 - destinations 16
 - general settings 12
 - manage configurations 10
 - parameters 6
 - refresh 24
 - select alert categories 20
 - verify 23
- Alert configuration
 - configuration name 10
 - description 10
- Alert Configuration
 - Reset existing destination settings 16
- Alert configuration steps 10
- alert definition panel 117
- alert destinations 16
- Alert Destinations
 - line command 16
- alert format
 - email 30
 - SNMP 30
 - text message 30
 - WTO 30
- alert ID 31
- Alert panel 16
- alerts 1
 - activation guidelines 5
 - add user-defined to an MIB 136
 - Attacks blocked by default filter rules are no longer logged 84, 112
 - Attacks blocked by filter rules (1609) 83
 - Attacks blocked by filter rules are no longer logged 111
 - audit trail incomplete (1609) 83
 - audit trail incomplete (1610) 84
 - audit trail incomplete (1611) 84
 - audit trail incomplete (2609) 111
 - audit trail incomplete (2610) 112
 - audit trail incomplete (2611) 112
 - Audited program has been executed 67
 - Audited UNIX program has been executed 71
 - buffers 6
 - Catchall profile used for STC 66

- alerts (*continued*)
 - Command Verifier deactivated by SETPROG EXIT 79
 - condition classes 5
 - Connect authority>=CREATE set 54
 - Connected to an important group 87
 - create 30
 - Data set added to APF list 98
 - Data set added to APF list using SETPROG 60
 - Data set addition to APF list detected 99
 - Data set addition to APF list detected (1207) 61
 - Data set removal from APF list detected 100
 - Data set removal from APF list detected (1208) 62
 - Data set removed from APF list 99
 - Data set removed from APF list using SETPROG 60
 - data source 31
 - Default STC logon ID used for STC 104
 - define conditions to issue 37
 - Dynamic Class Descriptor Table has been changed 78
 - Extended attribute changed 70, 74, 105
 - Global Access Checking table has been changed 78
 - Global read specified when altering file access 70
 - Global security countermeasure activated 75
 - Global security countermeasure added 106
 - Global security countermeasure changed 107
 - Global security countermeasure deactivated 76
 - Global security countermeasure deleted 106
 - Global security countermeasure or option changed 76
 - Global write specified when altering file 69
 - Group authority granted 49
 - Group authority removed 50
 - Highly authorized user revoked for password 48, 90
 - IBM Health Checker found high severity problem 82, 110
 - IBM Health Checker found low severity problem 81, 109
 - IBM Health Checker found medium severity problem 81, 109
 - installation defined 30
 - Interface security class changed 86, 114
- intervals 6

- alerts (*continued*)
 - Invalid password attempts exceed limit 52
 - Invalid password attempts for one specific logon ID exceed limit 92
 - IP filter rules changed 86, 114
 - IP filtering support and IPSec tunnel support deactivated 85, 113
 - Logon by unknown user 46
 - Logon of user ID 47
 - logon with emergency logonid 90
 - Logon with emergency user ID 46
 - Major administrative activity (1120) 56
 - Major administrative activity (2120) 96
 - NON-CNCL authority used by non-NON-CNCL logon ID 95
 - Non-expiring password enabled (1119) 56
 - Non-expiring password enabled (2119) 96
 - Non-OPERATIONS user accessed data set with OPERATIONS 51
 - Non-regular access to clear text PCI PAN data detected (1210) 63
 - Non-regular access to clear text PCI PAN data detected (2210) 101
 - Non-regular access to PCI AUTH data detected (1211) 63
 - Non-regular access to PCI AUTH data detected (2211) 102
 - Non-regular access to PCI PAN data detected (1209) 62
 - Non-regular access to PCI PAN data detected (2209) 27, 101
 - Non-regular access to sensitive resources detected (1212 or 1213) 29
 - Non-regular access to sensitive data set detected (2212) 102
 - Non-regular access to sensitive data set detected (2213) 103
 - Non-regular access to site sensitive data set detected (1212) 64
 - Non-regular access to site sensitive data set detected (1213) 65
 - Password history flushed 53, 92
 - permit issued on BPX.SUPERUSER 75
 - Ports below 1024 are not reserved anymore 85, 113
 - predefined 41
 - problem determination 127
 - Protected status removed detected (1121) 57
 - RACF Resource class activated 77
 - RACF Resource class deactivated 77
 - READALL authority used by non-READALL logon ID 95

alerts (continued)

- SECURITY authority used by non-SECURITY logon ID 94
- SMF 119 subtype is no longer written 84, 112
- SMF data loss started 79
- SMF data loss started (2601) 107
- SMF logging resumed after failure 80
- SMF logging resumed after failure (2602) 108
- SMF record flood detected (1607) 82
- SMF record flood detected (1608) 83
- SMF record flood detected (2607) 110
- SMF record flood starts dropping records (2608) 111
- SPECIAL authority used by non-SPECIAL user 51
- specify destination 3
- Superuser privileged shell obtained by user 73, 105
- Superuser privileged UNIX program executed 72
- Superuser privileges set on UNIX program 73
- Suspect password changes 53, 93
- SVC definition changed 80, 108
- System authority granted 91
- System authority removed 91
- System-level authority granted 48
- System-level authority removed 49
- Tivoli Workload Scheduler job has failed (1806) 89
- Tivoli Workload Scheduler job has failed (2806) 116
- Tivoli Workload Scheduler job has not started (1804) 88
- Tivoli Workload Scheduler job has not started (2804) 115
- Tivoli Workload Scheduler job is late (1805) 89
- Tivoli Workload Scheduler job is late (2805) 116
- Too many violations 55, 94
- trusted or privileged assigned to STC, general resource 68
- types 3
- UACC>=UPDATE on a DATASET profile 58
- UACC>NONE on a DATASET profile 59
- UID(0) assigned 74
- Unauthorized update on sensitive member detected (1214) 65
- Unauthorized update on sensitive member detected (2214) 104
- UNIX file access violation 69
- Update on APF data set 59, 98
- WARNING mode access on data set 97
- WARNING mode access on data set alert 57
- WARNING mode access on general resource 67
- zSecure Access Monitor not active (1801) 87
- zSecure server connection lost (1802) 88

alerts (continued)

- zSecure server connection lost (2802) 115
- application alerts 87, 115
- Attacks blocked by default filter rules are no longer logged alert 84, 112
- Attacks blocked by filter rules (1609) alert 83
- Attacks blocked by filter rules are no longer logged alert 111
- audit trail incomplete (1609) alert 83
- audit trail incomplete (1610) alert 84
- audit trail incomplete (1611) 84
- audit trail incomplete (2609) alert 111
- audit trail incomplete (2610) alert 112
- audit trail incomplete (2611) alert 112
- Audited program has been executed alert 67
- Audited UNIX program has been executed alert 71
- AVERAGEINTERVAL buffers 6
- configuration 6
- User interface 12

B

- BAROC file 139
- BCC 16
- buffer
 - usage, monitor 6
- Buffer number
 - User interface 12
- buffer size 6
 - calculating 6
 - configuration 6
- Buffer size
 - User interface 12
- buffers for alerts 6
- BUFSIZE 6
 - configuration 6
 - User interface 12

C

- C2RSYSLG DD 16
- Catchall profile used for STC alert 66
- categories of alerts 20
- CC 16
- CKFREEZE
 - collect time 12
 - User interface 12
- classes of alert conditions 5
- Collect name
 - User interface 12
- Collect time
 - User interface 12
- COLLECTSTCNAME
 - User interface 12
- COLLECTTIME
 - User interface 12
- command in alert definition 40
- Command Verifier deactivated by SETPROG EXIT 79
- condition classes of alerts 5

configuration

- alert 1102 117
- alert 1701 120
- alert 1804, 1805, 1806, 2804, 2805, 2806 121
- alert 2102 117
- alert 2115 121
- emergency users 117
- guidelines 6
- Number of violations and logonids to exclude alert 121
- configuration data set 3
- configurationmajor administrative activity alert 1120, 2120 119
- configurationRevocation for excessive violations alert alert 1115 118
- configure alerts 3
- Connect authority>=CREATE set alert 54
- Connected to an important group alert 87
- control alerts
 - ACF2 106
- create an alert 30

D

- Data set added to APF list alert 98
- Data set added to APF list using SETPROG alert 60
- Data set addition to APF list detected (1207) alert 61
- Data set addition to APF list detected alert 99
- data set alerts
 - ACF2 97
 - RACF 57
- Data set removal from APF list detected (1208) alert 62
- Data set removal from APF list detected alert 100
- Data set removed from APF list alert 99
- Data set removed from APF list using SETPROG alert 60
- DEBUG BUFFER 6
- Default STC logon ID used for STC alert 104
- destination of alerts 3
- Dynamic Class Descriptor Table has been changed 78

E

e-mail

- alert format 30, 45
- BCC address 16
- C2RSMTP DD 16
- CC address 16
- Font size 16
- From address 16
- layout 39
- Output format 16
- Recipient address 16
- Replyto address 16
- User interface 16

- education xii
- email
 - address lists 24
- emergency user configuration 117
- environment dependent selection criteria 37
- Environment refresh
 - configuration 6
 - problem determination 125
 - User interface 12
- Extended attribute changed alert 70, 74, 105

F

- FROM 16

G

- general resource alerts
 - ACF2 104
 - RACF 66
- Global Access Checking table has been changed 78
- Global read specified when altering file access alert 70
- Global security countermeasure activated alert 75
- Global security countermeasure added alert 106
- Global security countermeasure changed alert 107
- Global security countermeasure deactivated alert 76
- Global security countermeasure deleted alert 106
- Global security countermeasure or option changed alert 76
- global skeleton 37
- Global write specified when altering file alert 69
- group alerts 87
- Group authority granted alert 49
- Group authority removed alert 50
- GSO setting changes 106

H

- Highly authorized user revoked for password alert 48, 90

I

- IBM
 - Software Support xii
 - Support Assistant xii
- IBM Health Checker found high severity problem alert 82
- IBM Health Checker found high severity problem alert 110
- IBM Health Checker found low severity problem alert 81, 109
- IBM Health Checker found medium severity problem alert 81, 109
- Important groups 120

- in-memory buffer usage 6
- information for problem diagnosis 125
- installation defined alert
 - ISPF Skeleton 31
 - SMF filter 31
 - WTO filter 31
- installation defined alerts 37
 - action specification 38
 - add custom 30
 - command section 40
 - email layout 39
 - ISPF Skeleton 35
 - LIKELIST 37
 - pre-selection filter 37
 - SNMP layout 39
 - stage 1 member 35
 - text message layout 39
 - UNIX syslog layout 40
- installation-specific names 117
- Interface security class changed alert 86, 114
- INTERVAL
 - buffers 6
 - configuration 6
 - User interface 12
- intervals for alerts 6
- Invalid password attempts exceed limit alert 52
- Invalid password attempts for one specific logon ID exceed limit alert 92
- IP filter rules changed alert 86, 114
- IP filtering support and IPSec tunnel support deactivated alert 85, 113
- ISPF Skeleton
 - installation defined alert 31
- issue an alert 37

L

- license problem diagnosis 127
- LIKELIST
 - pre-selection filter 37
 - problem determination 125
- Logon by unknown user alert 46
- Logon of user ID alert 47
- logon with emergency logonid alert 90
- Logon with emergency user ID alert 46

M

- MAILFONTSIZE 16
- MAILTO 16
- Major administrative activity (1120) alert 56
- Major administrative activity (2120) alert 96
- manage alert configurations 10
- members from verification 23
- MIB file merging 139
- monitor general system events 107
- monitor user events
 - ACF2 user 90
 - RACF user 46
- Moving window
 - buffers 6
 - configuration 6

- Moving window (*continued*)
 - User interface 12

N

- NetView
 - configuration 135
- NON-CNCL authority used by non-NON-CNCL logon ID alert 95
- Non-expiring password enabled (1119) alert 56
- Non-expiring password enabled (2119) alert 96
- Non-OPERATIONS user accessed data set with OPERATIONS alert 51
- Non-regular access to clear text PCI PAN data detected (1210) alert 63
- Non-regular access to clear text PCI PAN data detected (2210) alert 101
- Non-regular access to PCI AUTH data detected (1211) alert 63
- Non-regular access to PCI AUTH data detected (2211) alert 102
- Non-regular access to PCI PAN data detected (1209) alert 62
- Non-regular access to PCI PAN data detected (2209) alert 27, 101
- Non-regular access to sensitive resources detected (1212 or 1213) alert 29
- Non-regular access to sensitive data set detected (2212) alert 102
- Non-regular access to sensitive data set detected (2213) alert 103
- Non-regular access to site sensitive data set detected (1212) alert 64
- Non-regular access to sitesensitive data set detected (1213) alert 65
- notification methods 1
- number of buffers
 - buffers 6
 - configuration 6
- NUMBUFS
 - buffers 6
 - configuration 6
 - User interface 12

O

- online
 - publications vii, viii, x
 - terminology vii
- OPTION parameter 6

P

- panel
 - Setup Alert 9, 20, 23, 24
- panels
 - Alert 16
- parameters
 - OPTION 6
 - REPORT 6
 - values 6
- Password history flushed alert 53, 92
- periodical overview 123
- permit issued on BPX.SUPERUSER 75

- Ports below 1024 are not reserved
 - any more alert 85, 113
- predefined alerts
 - ACF2 90
 - ACF2 control 106
 - ACF2 data set 97
 - ACF2 system 107
 - ACF2 user 90
 - application 87, 115
 - data set access 57
 - data set profile 57
 - format 45
 - general resource ACF2 104
 - general resource RACF 66
 - group 87
 - installation-specific names 117
 - list 41
 - RACF 46
 - RACF control 75
 - RACF user 46
 - severity levels 41
 - system 79
 - UNIX ACF2 105
 - UNIX RACF 68
- problem determination
 - find information for diagnosis 125
 - guidance 125
 - license 127
- problem diagnosis for zSecure Alert 126
- problem diagnosis for zSecure
 - Audit 125
- problem-determination xii
- Protected status removed detected (1121)
 - alert 57
- publications
 - accessing online vii, viii, x
 - list of for this product vii, viii, x
 - obtaining licensed vii
 - obtaining licensed publications viii

Q

- QRadar SIEM
 - SYSLOG format 145

R

- RACF
 - control alerts 75
 - data set alerts 57
 - predefined alerts 46
 - user alerts 46
- RACF Resource class activated alert 77
- RACF Resource class deactivated
 - alert 77
- READALL authority used by
 - non-READALL logon ID alert 95
- Refresh
 - User interface 24
- refresh alert configuration 24
- REFRESH command 24
- REPLYTO 16
- REPORT parameter 6
- Reporting interval
 - buffers 6
 - configuration 6
- Reporting interval (*continued*)
 - User interface 12
- Reporting run, problem
 - determination 125

S

- sddtrap commands
 - AIX 140
 - Windows 142
- SECURITY authority used by
 - non-SECURITY logon ID alert 94
- selection criteria 37
- Setup Alert panel 9, 20, 23, 24
- Skeleton
 - Global 12
- SMF 119 subtype is no longer written
 - alert 84, 112
- SMF data loss started (2601) alert 107
- SMF data loss started alert 79
- SMF filter
 - installation defined alert 31
- SMF logging resumed after failure (2602)
 - alert 108
- SMF logging resumed after failure
 - alert 80
- SMF record flood detected (1607)
 - alert 82
- SMF record flood detected (1608)
 - alert 83
- SMF record flood detected (2607)
 - alert 110
- SMF record flood starts dropping records
 - (2608) alert 111
- SMF_x
 - User interface 31
- SMTPTOFILE 16
- SNMP
 - alert format 30
 - C2RSNMP DD 16
 - layout 39
 - output 129
 - Recipient address 16
 - traps 129
 - User interface 16
- SNMPTO 16
- SNMPTOFILE 16
- SPECIAL authority used by
 - non-SPECIAL user alert 51
- stage 1 member
 - installation defined alert 35
 - verify 23
- STAGE1INTERVAL
 - configuration 6
 - User interface 12
- Superuser privileged shell obtained by
 - user alert 73, 105
- Superuser privileged UNIX program
 - executed alert 72
- Superuser privileges set on UNIX
 - program alert 73
- Suspect password changes alert 53, 93
- SVC definition changed alert 80, 108
- SYSLOG format
 - QRadar SIEM 145
- system alerts
 - ACF2 107

- system alerts (*continued*)
 - general 79
- System authority granted alert 91
- System authority removed alert 91
- System-level authority granted alert 48
- System-level authority removed alert 49

T

- terminology vii
- text message
 - alert format 30
 - From address 16
 - layout 39
 - Recipient 16
 - Replyto address 16
 - User interface 16
- Tivoli Enterprise Console
 - configuration 133
- Tivoli Workload Scheduler 121
- Tivoli Workload Scheduler job has failed
 - (1806) 89
- Tivoli Workload Scheduler job has failed
 - (2806) 116
- Tivoli Workload Scheduler job has not
 - started (1804) 88
- Tivoli Workload Scheduler job has not
 - started (2804) 115
- Tivoli Workload Scheduler job is late
 - (1805) 89
- Tivoli Workload Scheduler job is late
 - (2805) 116
- Too many violations alert 55, 94
- training xii
- traps
 - definition syntax 137
 - variables 136
- troubleshooting xii
- trusted or privileged assigned to STC,
 - general resource alert 68

U

- UACC>=UPDATE on a DATASET profile
 - alert 58
- UACC>NONE on a DATASET profile
 - alert 59
- UID(0) assigned alert 74
- Unauthorized update on sensitive
 - member detected (1214) alert 65
- Unauthorized update on sensitive
 - member detected (2214) alert 104
- UNIX alerts
 - ACF2 105
 - RACF 68
- UNIX file access violation alert 69
- UNIX syslog
 - address 16
 - C2RSYSLG DD 16
 - layout 40
 - User interface 16
- Update on APF data set alert 59, 98
- user alerts
 - ACF2 90
 - RACF 46

user-defined alert
add to an MIB 136

V

values for parameters 6
Verify
User interface 23

W

WARNING mode access on data set
alert 57, 97
WARNING mode access on general
resource alert 67
WTO
alert format 30
C2RWTO DD 16
User interface 16
WTO filter
installation defined alert 31
WTOTOFILE 16
WTOx
User interface 31

Z

zSecure Access Monitor not active alert
(1801) 87
zSecure Alert
configure 9, 10, 12, 16
zSecure server connection lost alert
(1802) 88
zSecure server connection lost alert
(2802) 115



Printed in USA

SC27-5642-02

